

E06901

**M. C.
SAIHGAL'S
HINDUSTANI GRAMMAR.**

**COMPLETE
(VOLUMES I & II)**

**ASSISTED BY
D. MITCHEL**

SEPTEMBER 1917

PRINTED AT THE PUNJAB STEAM PRESS, LAHORE.

FIRST EDITION.

PRICE Rs. 3/8

M. C.
SAIHGAL'S
HINDUSTANI GRAMMAR

FOR THE USE OF
OFFICERS,
NON-COMMISSIONED OFFICERS AND MEN
PREPARING FOR THE LOWER, HIGHER AND
COLLOQUIAL EXAMINATIONS

SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR
INSTRUCTION IN
MILITARY SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES

BY
MOOL CHAND SAIHGAL
Regimental Munshi 11st Kent Regiment
CAPTAIN IN RETIRE, BOMBAY ARMY (RETIRED)
DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, GOVERNMENT OF PUNJAB
SEBASTIAN, SIMLA HILLS

ASSISTED
BY
D MITCHEL

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

FIRST EDITION

Price Vol. I Rs. 2

Vol. II Rs. 1

AUGUST 1917

2. Complete Vol. I & II Rs. 3

Obtainable from the **Author** or the principal
Book-sellers.

PRINTED BY S. M. YABEEN AT THE PUNJAB STEAM PRESS, LAHORE.

DEDICATED

(By special permission)

**MAJOR-GENERAL
W. CROSS BARRATT, C.B., D.S.O.**

COMMANDING

The 16th Indian Division,

DALHOUSIE

PREFACE.

It is a well known fact that during the last few years, the Government of India, has desired that a greater knowledge of the Hindustani language should be imparted, not only to Officers, but also to Non-commissioned Officers, and men of His Majesty's Forces, residing in India.

The Authorities consider it practically essential, that Officers should have at least an elementary knowledge, for every day use, and it is hoped that Officers Commanding Units, will endeavour to instill amongst their men the inclination to study Hindustani, as it not only may be of service to them during the present War, but may be advantageous in later days.

With this aim in view, and having had a vast experience as an Official teacher for a number of years, I have decided to publish this grammar, which has been composed, in order to be of value, not only to the student who desires to acquire an elementary knowledge, but also that he may prepare to pass the Lower, Higher and Colloquial Examinations.

"METHOD OF STUDY."

I desire to emphasize, both to the student as well as to the teacher, that it is absolutely necessary for the student to be able to master the first lesson thoroughly, to commit to memory the rules, and to learn the vocabulary, before he proceeds with the second lesson, and so forth throughout the book.

With each lesson two Exercises "A" and "B" have been given for translation. I strongly advise the first half of each exercise to be verbally translated, whilst the second half should be written. The Hindustani sentences are to be read "**Aloud**" in order that the student may obtain the correct pronunciation, with a view to prepare him, as soon as possible for "**General**" and "**Regular**" "**Conversation.**"

PART I.

Part I. Is composed of all the essential and elementary rules; particular pains have been taken to explain grammatical phraseology, in the simplest manner, giving at the same time examples and footnotes, both for the **Rules and Exercises.**

A summary of each part of speech has been inserted in Parts 1 and 2, which will not only help the student to revise, the rules he has previously learnt, but he will be able to perceive at a glance, from the **Tables** (of the various parts of speech), some of the most important facts, namely the *declensions*. The teacher must demonstrate from these **Tables**, how very important it is, in Hindustani, that the terminations are understood, and learnt by heart and that the agreements are made accordingly.

Some of the most important "**Idiomatic Expressions**" have been introduced here and there, from the earliest stage of this work, in order that the student may more readily and naturally familiarize himself with such constructions, which are frequently foreign to their English equivalents.

PART 2.

It will be necessary for those preparing for the Lower and Higher Examinations to learn the alphabet, in order to obtain the correct pronunciation, and to enable them to translate the exercises practically at once in the Hindustani Characters and *visa versa*.

Part. 2. Contains the more advanced rules, in particular the use of **Compound** verbs, frequently used in all Indian Circles, and therefore this Volume will contain the knowledge required for all practical purposes.

PART 3.

In order that this **Grammar** may be of the greatest assistance to the various newly inaugurated **Officers' Training Schools and Colleges**, Part. 3. Commences with a "**Military Vocabulary**" and **Military Phrases**, in order that the candidate may be able to pass the **Colloquial Examination**.

PART 4.

Contains all the advanced stages necessary for the Lower and Higher Examinations, giving a resume of Part 1 and 2. with exercises on the previous studies, together with specimens of former Examination Papers.

A list of words (whose similarity must be committed to memory is here inserted, also some **Exceptional Nouns**, as well as several important Notes.

I recommend Volume 1. (Part. 1 and 2) for elementary knowledge, and therefore it has been published in a separate Volume, thus saving the expense of purchasing the **Complete Volume**. However, in case the student after obtaining Volume 1, desires to continue his study, he can purchase Volume 2, (containing Parts 3 and 4.)

In conclusion I take this opportunity to acknowledge with deep gratitude the substantial, technical and disinterested assistance given to me by my friend Corporal D. Mitchel, 1/7th Hampshire Regiment, attached to the 16th Indian Divisional Staff, in the preparation of this Grammar.

SUBATHU :

MOOL CHAND SAIHGAL,

Dated August 20th 1917. }

MIR MUNSHI.

INDEX.

CONTENTS.	PAGE.
Alphabet	i to v
Vowels and Signs	vi

PART I.

Imperatives	1
Verb	2 to 10
Summary of the Verb	11
Nouns and their Nominative Plurals	13
Oblique cases and their Plurals	14 and 15
Summary of the Noun	16 and 17
Pronouns	18 to 21
Summary of Pronouns	22 and 23
Masculine Postpositions	24
Feminine Postpositions	25
Possessives	26 and 27
Adjectives	28 to 31
Summary of Possessives and Adjectives	32
Transitive Verb	34 to 37
Passives	38
Summary of the Transitive and Passive Verbs	40 and 41

PART II.

Irregular use of certain Participles	43
Use of <i>Ap</i>	44
Infinitive used as a Noun	46
Use of " <i>Chāhiyē, Paṇā</i> and <i>Honā</i> "	48
Use of " <i>Milnā</i> "	50
"To have" denoting possession	51
"To" and "From" implying motion	53
COMPOUND VERBS	
" To be able " and " to have finished "	54
" To begin, to allow and to be allowed "	56
" To be in the habit of and to be about to "	58
Direct speech	60
Summary to Part II	62 and 63
Appendix "A"	
Causitive Verbs	64
Appendix "B"	
Intensives	65
Appendix "C"	
Special uses of " <i>rahnā</i> and <i>idnā</i> "	66

PART III (MILITARY.)

	PAGE.
Section I.	
Military Words ...	67 to 86
Section II.	
Military Phrases ...	87 to 98
Section III.	
Military Exercises ...	99 to 102

PART IV.

Section I.	
Miscellaneous Exercises and short stories ...	103 to 115
Section II.	
Colloquial Exercises ...	116 to 117
Section III.	
(1) Important list of some exceptional words ...	118 to 119
(2) A List of Feminine Nouns ...	119 to 121
(3) A List of words similar in form ...	121 to 124

ALPHABET.

**The Hindustani Alphabet is written from right to left
and consists of 35 letters. viz.**

Number.	Letter.	Name.	Transliteration.	Number.	Letter.	Name.	Transliteration.
1	ا	<i>alif</i>	<i>a</i>	18	س	<i>sīn</i>	<i>s</i>
2	ب	<i>bē</i>	<i>b</i>	19	ش	<i>shūn</i>	<i>sh</i>
3	پ	<i>pē</i>	<i>p</i>	20	ص	<i>sād</i>	<i>s</i>
4	ت	<i>tē</i>	<i>t</i>	21	ض	<i>zād</i>	<i>z</i>
5	ٹ	<i>ṭā</i>	<i>ṭ</i>	22	ط	<i>toṭ</i>	<i>t</i>
6	ث	<i>ṯē</i>	<i>ṯ</i>	23	ظ	<i>zoṭ</i>	<i>z</i>
7	ج	<i>jīm</i>	<i>j</i>	24	ع	<i>ain</i>	<i>a</i>
8	چ	<i>chē</i>	<i>ch</i>	25	غ	<i>ghayn</i>	<i>gh</i>
9	ح	<i>hē</i>	<i>h</i>	26	ف	<i>fē</i>	<i>f</i>
10	خ	<i>khē</i>	<i>kh</i>	27	ق	<i>quāf</i>	<i>q</i>
11	د	<i>dāl</i>	<i>d</i>	28	ک	<i>kāf</i>	<i>k</i>
12	ڈ	<i>ḍāl</i>	<i>ḍ</i>	29	گ	<i>gāf</i>	<i>g</i>
13	ذ	<i>zāl</i>	<i>z</i>	30	ل	<i>lām</i>	<i>l</i>
14	ر	<i>rē</i>	<i>r</i>	31	م	<i>mīm</i>	<i>m</i>
15	ڑ	<i>ṛā</i>	<i>ṛ</i>	32	ن	<i>nūn</i>	<i>n</i>
16	ز	<i>zē</i>	<i>z</i>	33	و	<i>wāo</i>	<i>w, v, u or o</i>
17	ژ	<i>zhā</i>	<i>zh</i>	34	ہ	<i>hē</i>	<i>h</i>
				35	ی or ے	<i>yē</i>	<i>y, i or e</i>

When composing a Hindustani word, nearly all the characters are joined together. In order that the student may more readily commit to memory the Hindustani Alphabet, they have been tabulated in four groups, according to their characteristics and various shapes they assume in their initial, medial and final forms :—

FIRST GROUP.

Names.	Detached form.	English equivalent.	Finals.	Medials.	Initials.	Pronunciation.	Characteristics.
<i>Alif</i>	ا	a	ا	ا	ا	If long, like "A" in "wash." If short, like "u" in "but."	These letters are only joined on the right side, thus they are always joined to the letter which precedes them and never to the one that follows them.
<i>Dāl</i>	د	d	د	د	د	Like "h" in "thee."	
<i>Pāl</i>	پ	p	پ	پ	پ	Occurs only in Hindi words.	
<i>Zāl</i>	ز	z	ز	ز	ز	...	
<i>Rē</i>	ر	r	ر	ر	ر	...	
<i>Rā</i>	ڑ	r	ڑ	ڑ	ڑ	Hard. Occurs only in Hindi words. Strike the tip of the tongue quickly against palate.	
<i>ẖ</i>	خ	z	خ	خ	خ	Like "s" in "wise."	
<i>zhā</i>	ج	zh	ج	ج	ج	Like "s" in "pleasure."	
<i>Wao</i>	و	w, v, u, o	و	و	و	...	

SECOND GROUP.

Names.	Detached form	English equivalents.	Finals.	Mediale.	Initials.	Pronunciation.	Characteristics.
Bê	ب	b	ب	ب	ب		The initial and medial forms in this group are shortened.
Pê	پ	p	پ	پ	پ	.....	
Tê	ت	t	ت	ت	ت	Soft, and is pronounced like Italian "T," tip of the tongue touching the upper dental row.	
Tâ	ث	t	ث	ث	ث	.....	
Sê	س	s	س	س	س	Only used in Arabic words.	
Fê	ف	f	ف	ف	ف	.....	
Nin	ن	n	ن	ن	ن	When, و in its final form is written without a dot, it is nasal.	
Yê	ي	y, i & e	ي	ي	ي	— (English "E") must be pronounced like "Ay" in "Bay." ي (English "T") must be pronounced like "EE" in "Teeth."	

THIRD GROUP.

Names.	Detached form	English equivalents.	Finals.	Medials.	Initials.	Pronunciation.	Characteristics.
<i>Jim</i>	ج	j	ج	ج	ج		In the initial and medial forms, the Circles in this group are omitted.
<i>Chē</i>	چ	ch	چ	چ	چ	.....	
<i>He</i>	ح	h	ح	ح	ح	Used only in Arabic words.	
<i>Khē</i>	خ	kh	خ	خ	خ	Guttural.	
<i>Ain</i>	ع	'a	ع	ع	ع	Guttural, and occurs only in Arabic words.	
<i>Ghain</i>	غ	gh	غ	غ	غ	Ditto.	
<i>Qaaf</i>	ق	q	ق	ق	ق	.....	
<i>Sip</i>	س	s	س	س	س	.....	
<i>Shin</i>	ش	sh	ش	ش	ش	.....	
<i>Sād</i>	ص	s	ص	ص	ص	Occurs in Arabic and Persian words only.	
<i>Zād</i>	ض	z	ض	ض	ض	Ditto.	

FOURTH GROUP.

Names.	Detached form	English equivalents.	Finals.	Medials.	Initials.	Pronunciation.	Characteristics.
<i>Toe</i>	ٲ	t	ٲ	ٲ	ٲ	Occurs only in Arabic and Persian words.	
<i>Zoe</i>	ظ	z	ظ	ظ	ظ	Ditto	
<i>Kāf</i>	ك	k	ك	ك	ك	...	
<i>Gāf</i>	گ	g	گ	گ	گ	...	
<i>Lām</i>	ل	l	ل	ل	ل	...	
<i>Mīm</i>	م	m	م	م	م	...	
<i>Hē</i>	ه	h	هـ	هـ	هـ	In the medial form, when a vowel precedes "H" use ه, otherwise use ا.	

SHORT VOWELS AND SIGNS.

- I. The sign [˘] (*zabar*) placed above any letter = (A) short, as [˘] = *kar*
- II. The sign [˙] (*pesh*) placed above any letter = (u) short, as [˙] = *kur*
- III. The sign _˘ (*zer*) placed below any letter = (i) short, as _˘ = *kir*
(like the "accents" in French.)
- IV. The sign ^ˉ (*madd*) only placed above 'alif' = (A) long, as ^ˉ = *āj*
- V. The sign ^ˆ (*Tashdid*) placed above any letter, doubles its pronunciation, as ^ˆ = *bachchā*
- VI. The sign ^ˆ (*Hamza*) is placed above the second vowel, when the first syllable of a word ends and the second one begins with a vowel.
- VII. The sign ^ˆ (*Tanwin*) is only used in Arabic words and is pronounced "N" as ^ˆ = *furān*.

LONG VOWELS.

- و = w or v at the beginning of a word or syllable, e. g. ورق = *warq*
- و = u when followed by the sign [˙] (*pesh*) or when preceded by another vowel e. g. [˙] = *kūch*
اور = *aur*
- و = o in all other cases e. g. کو = *ko*
- ي = y at the beginning of a word or syllable e. g. یار = *yār*
- ي = i when followed by the sign _˘ (*zer*) or when preceded by another vowel e. g. [˘] = *kharid*
- ي = ē in all other cases ایک = *aik*
- آ or ا = ā at the beginning of a word e. g. آس = *us*
آنت = *ant*
- ا = i at the beginning of a word, as اس = *is*
- ا = ā at the beginning of a word, as آگ = *ag*
- ع when used with *zabar*, *zer* or *pesh* is pronounced "a, i or u" respectively.

PART I.

LESSON 1.

IMPERATIVES.

1. All infinitives in Hindustani end in "Nā" ^(a) e.g.
To speak = *bolnā* بولنا
2. The root of the verb is ascertained by removing "Nā" from the infinitive, e.g. speak (thou) = *bol* بول
3. By adding (o) to the root the imperative ^(b) (plural) is formed, e.g. speak (you) = *bolo* بولو
4. Don't = *mat* or *nah* ^(c) نہ or مت
Don't speak = *mat bolo* or *nah bolo* مت بولو نہ بولو or نہ بولو
5. By adding "iyē" ^(d) to the root, the polite form of the imperative is formed, e.g. please speak = *boliyē* بولیئے
6. When expressing an order in the future, simply use the infinitive, e.g. come to-morrow = *kal ānā* کل آنا

VOCABULARY 1.

To come	= <i>ānā</i>	آنا	That	= <i>wah</i>	وہ
To come back	= <i>wāpis ānā</i>	واپس آنا	Quickly or soon	= <i>jaldi</i>	جلدی
To go	= <i>jānā</i>	جانا	Slowly	= <i>āhista</i>	آہستہ
To go back	= <i>wāpis jānā</i>	واپس جانا	Here	= <i>idhar</i> or <i>yuhān</i>	اُدھر - یہاں
To bring	= <i>lānā</i>	لانا	There	= <i>udhar</i> or <i>wahā</i>	اُدھر - وہاں
To take away	= <i>lejānā</i>	لیجانا	Inside	= <i>andar</i>	اندر
To stop, stay } or to wait }	= <i>thairnā</i>	تھیرنا	Outside	= <i>bāhar</i>	باہر
To sit down	= <i>baiṭhnā</i>	بیٹھنا	Work	= <i>kām</i>	کام
To-morrow } or yesterday }	= <i>kal</i>	کل	Water	= <i>pānī</i>	پانی
This	= <i>yih</i>	یہ	Tea	= <i>chā</i> (f)	چائے
			Book	= <i>kutāb</i> (f)	کتاب
			And	= <i>aur</i>	اور

• (a) The termination "nā" in Hindustani is equivalent to the prefix "to" in English.

(b) The imperative expresses a command.

(c) "mat" مت is imperious. "nah" نہ is more polite, hence the latter is preferable.

(d) Exceptions to Rule 5.

	Ordinary Imperative.	Polite Imperative.
To give = <i>dēnā</i>	<i>do</i> دو	<i>dējīyē</i> دیجیئے
To take = <i>lēnā</i>	<i>lo</i> لو	<i>lējīyē</i> لیجیئے
To do = <i>karnā</i>	<i>karo</i> کرو	<i>kījīyē</i> کیجیئے
To drink = <i>pīnā</i>	<i>pīo</i> پیو	<i>pījīyē</i> پیجیئے

EXERCISE I—(A).

1. Come here.* 2. Go there. 3. Come back soon. 4. Please go back quickly. 5. Please don't ^(a) speak slowly. 6. Bring the book here. 7. Take away this ^(b) tea. 8. Please come inside and sit down. 9. Don't wait outside. 10. Please don't give that water. 11. Don't take that book. 12. Come here to-morrow. ^(c)

EXERCISE I—(B).

1. *Chā idhar lāo.* 2. *Andar baiṭho aur kām karo.* 3. *Bāhar mat jānā.* 4. *Woh kām jaldī karo.* 5. *Kal yih kitab club ^(d) lē jānā.* 6. *Lo, yih pānī udhar lē jāo.* 7. *Thairo, woh pānī idhar mat lāo.* 8. *Ahista jānā aur jaldī wāpis ānā.* 9. *Aj wahān mat jāo, kal jānā.* 80. *Aiyē, aiyē, baiṭhiyē.*

LESSON 2.**VERB.**

7. (1). I = *main* میں (2). Thou = *tū* تو
 We = *ham* ہم You = *tum* تم
 (3). He, she, it or that = *woh* وہ
 They = *woh* وہ

8. The future tense is formed by adding (1) *-āngā* (2) *-ēgā* (3) *-ēgā* (for the singular) and (1) *-ēngē* (2) *-ogē* (3) *-ēnge* (for the plural) to the root.

EXAMPLES.

- I will or shall speak = *main bolāngā* میں بولوں گا
 Thou wilt or shalt speak = *tū bolēgā* تو بولے گا
 He will or shall speak = *woh bolēgā* وہ بولے گا

* The simplest sentence must contain at least two words, one to name the actor and the other to make the statement. The former is called "the subject" and the latter "the verb." The subject, as in English is placed first but the verb is always placed last in a Hindustani sentence.

(a). Negatives are alway placed directly before the verb, at the end of a sentence.

(b). Demonstrative Pronoun comes before the Noun referred to, as in English.

(c). Adverbs of time take preference to Adverbs of place.

(d). "To" with places is generally omitted. Therefore "to the club" is simply "club" in Hindustani.

She will or shall speak	= <i>woh bolēgi</i>	وہ ہو لینگے
We shall speak	= <i>ham bolēnge</i>	ہم ہو لینگے
You shall speak	= <i>tum bologē</i>	تم ہو لو گے
They shall speak	= <i>woh bolēngē</i>	وہ ہو لینگے
They shall speak (f)	= <i>woh bolēngin</i>	وہ ہو لینگیں

9. The Verb always agrees with its subject (in Number, Gender and Person) as shown above. Hence the termination (A) of the masculine singular changes into (E) for the masculine plural, into (I) for the feminine singular and into (IN) for the feminine plural for all tenses (except the Imperative and the Present Subjunctive).

10. The Present Subjunctive (a) is formed by cutting off the future terminations "gā and gē" etc., from the future tense.

I may speak	= <i>main bolān</i>	میں ہو لوں
Thou may speak	= <i>tū bolō</i>	تو ہو ے
He may speak	= <i>woh bolō</i>	وہ ہو ے
We may speak	= <i>ham bolēn</i>	ہم ہو لیں
You may speak	= <i>tum bolō</i>	تم ہو لو
They may speak	= <i>woh bolēn</i>	وہ ہو لیں

VOCABULARY 2.

To drink	= <i>piā</i>	پینا	Day after to morrow	} <i>parson</i>	پرسون
To eat	= <i>khānā</i>	کھا نا	Day before yesterday		
To see	= <i>dekhnā</i>	دیکھنا	Man	= <i>ādmi</i>	آدمی
To go away	= <i>chalā jānā</i>	چلا جانا	Woman	= <i>'aurat</i>	عورت
To say	= <i>din or roz</i>	دن روز	Servant	= <i>naukar</i>	لو کر
Night	= <i>āj</i>	آج	Loaf or bread	= <i>rotī (f)</i>	روتی
Night	= <i>rāt (f)</i>	رات	Wine	= <i>sharāb (f)</i>	شراب
To-night	= <i>āj rāt</i>	آج رات	But	= <i>lekin</i>	لیکن
Morning	= <i>subah (f)</i>	صبح	No or not	= <i>nahin</i>	نہیں
This morning	= <i>āj subah</i>	آج صبح	Or	= <i>yā</i>	یا
Evening	= <i>shām (f)</i>	شام	Good, well or alright	} = <i>achhā</i>	اچھا

(a). The Present Subjunctive is sometimes termed the "Aorist tense." For the negative it requires "nah نہ" before it, e. g.,

He may not speak = *woh nah bolō* وہ نہ ہو ے

The word "shāyad شاید" = perhaps is better to be prefixed in translating "might," e. g.,

He might come = *shāyad woh āyē* شاید وہ آئے

EXERCISE II—(A).

1. I shall not eat that loaf. 2. You will not drink wine. 3. We will go away. 4. He will not do this work quickly. 5. That man might not come to-day. 6. Perhaps he will go to-morrow. 7. I may go to day but the servant will come to-morrow. 8. That woman will bring a book the day after to-morrow. 9. Alright! we will see to-night. 10. May I come this morning or to-morrow evening? 11. That day will come soon. 12. Please go away.*

EXERCISE II—(B).

1. *Tum idhar naukār ho yā udhar ?* 2. *Ham āj subah bāhar jāīngē tum kal shām ānā.* 3. *Jaldī jaldī chalo.* 4. *Shāyad kal rāt woh ādmī yihān āēgā.* 5. *Tum woh kitāb logē yā nahīn ?* 6. *Ham āj-rāt bāhar khānā khāīngē.* 7. *Kal tum idhar ānā, lekin woh aurat āj rāt chālī jāēgi.* 8. *Sharāb nah pīnā.* 9. *Parson naukār idhar nahīn āēngē.* 10. *Tum āj yih kitāb dekhogē yā nahīn?*

jaldī jaldī=very quickly, *chalnā*=to walk, to move, "*khānā*" means "to eat," as well as "dinner."

LESSON 3.**VERBS—{continued}.**

11. The Auxiliary Verb "*honā* ہونا" = to be (also "to have" when used in conjunction with other verbs, i. e., as an Auxiliary Verb)*.

Present Tense.

I am	= <i>main hūn</i>	میں ہوں	We are	= <i>ham haiṇ</i>	ہم ہیں
Thou art	= <i>tū hai</i>	تو ہے	You are	= <i>tum ho</i>	تم ہو
He is	= <i>woh hai</i>	وہ ہے	They are	= <i>woh haiṇ</i>	وہ ہیں

Past Tense.

I was	= <i>main thā</i>	میں تھا	We were	= <i>ham thē</i>	ہم تھے
Thou wast	= <i>tū thā</i>	تو تھا	You were	= <i>tum thē</i>	تم تھے
He was	= <i>woh thā</i>	وہ تھا	They were	= <i>woh thē</i>	وہ تھے
She was	= <i>woh thi</i>	وہ تھی	They were (f)	= <i>woh thiṇ</i>	وہ تھیں

Future Tense.

I shall be	= <i>main hūngā</i>	میں ہوں گا	We shall be	= <i>ham hongē</i>	ہم ہوں گے
Thou shalt be	= <i>tū hogā</i>	تو ہو گا	You shall be	= <i>tum hogē</i>	تم ہو گے
He shall be	= <i>woh hogā</i>	وہ ہو گا	They shall be	= <i>woh hongē</i>	وہ ہوں گے
She shall be	= <i>woh hogī</i>	وہ ہو گی	They shall be (f)	= <i>woh hongīṇ</i>	وہ ہوں گی

* = *Chalē-jāyē*, i. e., both parts of the verb change in agreement with the plural subject (you, being understood).

12. Add "tā" (a) to the Root to form Present Participle.

e. g. speaking=*boltā* بولتا

13. From the Present Participle three tenses are formed, viz.

(1). The Present Tense, I speak or I am speaking (b).

<i>main boltā hūn</i>	میں بولتا ہوں	<i>ham boltē haiṅ</i>	ہم بولتے ہیں
<i>tū boltā hai</i>	تو بولتا ہے	<i>tum boltē ho</i>	تم بولتے ہو
<i>woh boltā hai</i>	وہ بولتا ہے	<i>woh boltē haiṅ</i>	وہ بولتے ہیں
<i>woh bolti hai</i>	وہ بولتی ہے	<i>woh bolti haiṅ (f)</i>	وہ بولتی ہیں

(2). The Imperfect Tense, I was speaking.

<i>main boltā thā</i>	میں بولتا تھا	<i>ham boltē thē</i>	ہم بولتے تھے
<i>tū boltā thā</i>	تو بولتا تھا	<i>tum boltē thē</i>	تم بولتے تھے
<i>woh boltā thā</i>	وہ بولتا تھا	<i>woh boltē thē</i>	وہ بولتے تھے
<i>woh bolti thī</i>	وہ بولتی تھی	<i>woh bolti thīṅ (f)</i>	وہ بولتی تھیں

(3). The Conditional Tense (c).

(a). If I had spoken= <i>agar</i> (d) <i>main boltā</i>	اگر میں بولتا
(b). (Then) I would have spoken= <i>to</i> (d) <i>main boltā</i>	تو میں بولتا
(a). If she had spoken= <i>agar woh bolti</i>	اگر وہ بولتی
(b). (Then) she would have spoken= <i>to woh bolti</i>	تو وہ بولتی
(a). If we had spoken= <i>agar ham boltē</i>	اگر ہم بولتے
(b). (Then) we would have spoken= <i>to ham boltē</i>	تو ہم بولتے
(a). If they had spoken (f) = <i>agar woh boltiṅ</i>	اگر وہ بولتیں
(b). Then they would have spoken (f) = <i>to woh boltiṅ</i>	تو وہ بولتیں

VOCABULARY 3.

To play	= <i>khelnā</i>	کھیلنا	To read	= <i>parhṇā</i>	پڑھنا
To sleep	= <i>sonā</i>	سو نا	To cut, bite	} = <i>kāṭnā</i>	کاٹنا
To write	= <i>likhnā</i>	لکھنا	reap, sting		

(a) "tā" = "-ing" in English.

(b) Auxiliary verbs are always placed last (i.e. after the principal verb.)

(c). The Present Participle without the Auxiliary Verb = Conditional Tense. For the negative the Conditional Tense must have "nāh" نہ, but the Present and Imperfect Tenses take "nahīn" نہیں. In the Present Tense, the Auxiliary Verb "hūn" ہوں etc., can be omitted only when the negative "nahīn" نہیں is used.

e.g., I am not going = *main nahīn jātā* میں نہیں جا تا

(d). "Agar" اگر and "to" تو are co-relatives, i.e., if the first clause begins with "agar" اگر, then the second clause must begin with "to" تو.

To sow	= <i>bonā</i>	برنا	Milk	= <i>dūdḥ</i>	دودھ
Every	= <i>har</i>	ھر	Some, something	} <i>kuchḥ</i>	کچھ
Daily	= <i>har-roz</i> or <i>roz-roz</i>	ھر روز روز روز	or anything		
Brother	= <i>bhāi</i>	بھائی	Nothing	= <i>kuchḥ nahīn</i>	کچھ نہیں
Sister	= <i>bahin</i>	بھین	Whatever	= <i>jo-kuchḥ</i>	جو کچھ
Letter	= <i>chīṭṭhī</i>	چٹھی	Whole	= <i>tamām</i>	تمام
Sugar	= <i>chīnī</i>	چینی			

EXERCISE III.—(A).

1. He is playing. 2. The brother is going to-day, but the sister is coming. 3. He stops here the whole day. 4. She was writing a letter. 5. We eat sugar and drink milk. 6. He does nothing. 7. I was not doing anything there. 8. They were reading something. 9. He does nothing the whole day and sleeps the whole night. 10. If you had come yesterday, you would have seen the book. 11. If you had not come, I would not have gone out daily. 12. A man reaps whatever he sows.

EXERCISE III.—(B).

1. Jo kuchḥ karo, ṭhīk ṭhīk karnā. 2. *Wahān* āj kuchḥ kām nahīn. 3. *Woh tamām roz khēltā hai.* 4. *Tum rāt bhar sotē ho.* 5. *Ham dūdḥ aur chā har roz pītē haiṅ.* 6. *Agar tum parson idhar ātē to bahut kuchḥ dēkhētē.* 7. *Kuchḥ kuchḥ pānī idhar hai.* 8. *Woh aurat āj chīṭṭhī likhēgi.* 9. *Tum yih kitāb nahīn parhītē.* 10. *Roz roz idhar mat ānō. nahīn to girōgē.* 11. *Bahut sē ādmī kharāb haiṅ.*

ṭhīk ṭhīk (ٹھیک ٹھیک) = properly, correctly, exactly.

rāt bhar (رات بھر) = *tamām rāt*.

bahut (بہت) = very,

bahut kuchḥ = a lot, a great deal.

kuchḥ kuchḥ = somewhat.

girnā (گرنā) = to fall.

nahīn to = otherwise.

bahut sē = many.

kharāb (خراب) = bad.

LESSON 4.

VERBS.—(continued).

14. Add (A) to the Root to form the Past Participle.

e.g., Spoke or spoken = *bolā* بولا

If the Root ends in a Vowel (a, e, i, o, u) add "yā ی" (this is done for euphony).

e.g., Brought = *lāyā* لایا, from *lānā* لانا = to bring.

15. From the Past Participle three tenses are formed, viz.

(1). Past Tense.

I spoke	= <i>main bolā</i> میں بولا	We spoke	= <i>ham bolē</i> ہم بولے
Thou spoke	= <i>tū bolā</i> تو بولا	You spoke	= <i>tum bolē</i> تم بولے
He spoke	= <i>woh bolā</i> وہ بولا	They spoke	= <i>woh bolē</i> وہ بولے
She spoke	= <i>woh bolī</i> وہ بولی	They spoke (f)	= <i>woh bolīn</i> وہ بولیں

(2). Perfect Tense.

I have spoken	= <i>main bolā hai</i> میں بولا ہے
Thou hast spoken	= <i>tū bolā hai</i> تو بولا ہے
He has spoken	= <i>woh bolā hai</i> وہ بولا ہے
She has spoken	= <i>woh bolī hai</i> وہ بولی ہے
We have spoken	= <i>ham bolē hai</i> ہم بولے ہیں
You have spoken	= <i>tum bolē ho</i> تم بولے ہو
They have spoken	= <i>woh bolē hai</i> وہ بولے ہیں
They have spoken (f)	= <i>woh bolī hai</i> وہ بولی ہیں

(3). Pluperfect Tense.

I had spoken	= <i>main bolā thā</i> میں بولا تھا
Thou hadst spoken	= <i>tū bolā thā</i> تو بولا تھا
He had spoken	= <i>woh bolā thā</i> وہ بولا تھا
She had spoken	= <i>woh bolī thī</i> وہ بولی تھی
We had spoken	= <i>ham bolē thē</i> ہم بولے تھے
You had spoken	= <i>tum bolē thē</i> تم بولے تھے
They had spoken	= <i>woh bolē thē</i> وہ بولے تھے
They had spoken (f)	= <i>woh bolī thī</i> وہ بولی تھیں

16. The following five Verbs are irregular and are the only exceptions to Rule 14, viz.

To go	= <i>jānā</i> جانا	past part. = went	= <i>gayā</i> گیا
To do	= <i>karnā</i> کرنا	past part. = did	= <i>kīyā</i> کیا
To give	= <i>dinā</i> دینا	past part. = gave	= <i>diyā</i> دیا
To take	= <i>lēnā</i> لینا	past part. = took	= <i>liyā</i> لیا
To be	= <i>honā</i> ہونا	past part. = became or been	= <i>huā</i> ہوا

VOCABULARY 4.

To reach	} <i>pahunchnā</i> پہنچنا	Answer or	} <i>javāb</i> جواب
To arrive		reply	
To send	= <i>bhējnā</i> بھیجنا	Horse	= <i>ghorā</i> گھوڑا
To show	= <i>dikhānā</i> دکھانا	Very	= <i>bahut</i> بہت
To like	= <i>pasand-karnā</i>	Ago	= <i>huā</i> ہوا
To think	= <i>khiyāl-karnā</i> پسند کرنا	Two days	} <i>do roz hūē</i> دو روز ہوئے
Thought	= <i>khiyāl</i> خیال کرنا	ago	
		Thing	= <i>chīz</i> (ف) چیز

Place	= jagāh (جگہ)	At once	= fauran (فوراً)
Parade	= kawā'id (قواعد)	One	= ek (ایک)
Any	= koī (کوئی)	Two	= do (دو)
Again	= phir (پھر)	Three	= tīn (تین)
Angry	= khafā (خفا)	Four	= chār (چار)
Pleased, happy or glad	} khush (خوش)	Five	= pāñch (پانچ)

EXERCISE IV.—(A).

1. I arrived here five days ago ^(a). 2. He had not come yesterday. 3. They brought a letter and went away. 4. I brought no ^(b) answer. 5. They have come to-day. 6. There ^(c) was no parade yesterday. 7. Send this book back at once. 8. Will you show anything there ^(d)? 9. He was not pleased yesterday and is very angry to-day. 10. Do you like this place? 11. I think he will not come here. 12. Had he sent the horse, I would have gone there.

EXERCISE IV.—(B).

1. Chār roz hū jārah pahunchā hai. 2. Main yih jagah pasand nahīn kartā, yih kharāb jagāh hai. 3. Kal koi qawā'id nahīn thā, āj shām hogi. 4. Tum khayāl kartē ho kih woh āj bahut khūsh hai. 5. Main yih kitāb āj nahīn dikhāyāngā. 6. Tum kal Lahore gayē thē. 7. Phir khafā nah honā. 2. Yih ghora fauran idhar lāo. 9. Bahut sē ādmī udhar lēngē. 10. Kal kuchh chūzīn lānā.

LESSON 5.

ADDITIONAL NOTES ON VERBS.

17. Add *kar* ک or *kē* کے to the Root to form Conjunctive Participle ^(e) e. g. having spoken = *bolkar* or *bolkē* بولکر or بولکے

- Adverbs of time are placed at the beginning of a sentence.
- "No" is here to be translated by "koi" and "nahīn."
- "There" is not translated unless it means "that place."
- The position of words in a interrogative sentence is the same as that in an affirmative sentence. The tone of voice is raised to indicate the question, or the word "*kyā* کیا" which means "what" can be placed at the beginning of the sentence, as a sign of interrogation.

(e) It is so called because it avoids the use of the conjunction "and" and combines two sentences in one. It is used when both verbs have one common subject and the action of the second verb not only takes place after the first but also depends on it.

e. g. He came and sat down = *woh ā-kar baithā* وہ آیا بیٹھا

18. The Past Dubious Tense is formed by adding the future of " *honā* ہونا " to the past participle of another verb.

e.g., I must have spoken = *maiṇ bolā hūṅqā* میں بولا ہونگا

But, I might have spoken = *shāyad maiṇ bolā hūṅqā* شاید میں بولا ہونگا

(Vide foot note (a) lesson 2.)

19. Change the last (A) of the infinitive to (E) and add (*wālā* والہ) ^(a) to form the "Noun of Agency." e.g., Speaker = *bolnē wālā* بولنے والہ.

20. Change the last (A) of the Present Participle into (E) and add " *hi* ہی " ^(b) to form the "Adverbial Phrase."

e.g., As soon as (I, thou, he, we, you or they spoke) = *bolte hi* بولتے ہی

21. When the Present and Imperfect Tenses are used with a negative, the Present Participle alone is sometimes used, e. g.

I am not speaking = *maiṇ nahīṇ bolṭā* میں نہیں بولتا

She is not speaking = *woh nahīṇ bolṭī* وہ نہیں بولتی

They are not speaking (f) = *woh nahīṇ bolṭīṅ* ^(c) وہ نہیں بولتی ہیں

VOCABULARY.

To know	= <i>jānnā</i>	جاننا	Speech	} = <i>bāt</i> (f)	بات
Clean	= <i>sāf</i>	صاف	Matter		
To clean	= <i>sāf karnā</i>	صاف کرنا	Affair		
To prepare, or To make	= <i>banānā</i>	بنانا	Thing		
Ready	= <i>taiyyār</i>	تیار	Knife	= <i>chhuri</i> (f)	چھری
To get ready, or To prepare	= <i>taiyyār-karnā</i>	تیار کرنا	Fork	= <i>kāṇṭhā</i>	کانٹا
To hear, or To listen	= <i>sunnā</i>	سننا	Just, a little	= <i>zarā</i>	ذرا
To become	= <i>hojānā</i>	ہوجانا	Dinner	= <i>khānā</i>	کھانا
Before	= <i>pahle</i>	پہلے	Breakfast	= <i>hāzri</i> (f)	حاضری
Tree	= <i>darakht</i>	درخت	Six	= <i>chhi</i>	چھ
Wood, or Stick	= <i>lakṛi</i> (f)	لکڑی	Seven	= <i>sāt</i>	سات
			Eight	= <i>āṣṭ</i>	آٹھ
			Nine	= <i>nau</i>	نہ
			Ten	= <i>das</i>	دس

(a) "*wālā* والہ" can also be added to nouns (as, *lakṛi wālā* لکڑی والا) = woodman or wood-seller but not to adjectives.

(b) "*hi* ہی" can follow any part of speech as a particle of emphasis and means "only, alone" etc.

"*wuh* وہ" followed by "*hi* ہی" becomes "*wuhī* وہی" = the same or that very.

"*yih* یہ" followed by "*hi* ہی" becomes "*yihī* یہی" = the same or this very.

(c) When the auxiliary verb is omitted, the feminine plural termination (ہیں) is added to the participle.

IDIOMS.

This afternoon = *āj liere pahar ko* آج لیرے پہار کو
 At 8 o'clock = *āṣṭh bajē* آٹھ بجے

EXERCISE V—(A).

- (1). Having cut the tree we went away.*
- (2). The woodman came this afternoon and brought some wood.
- (3). Having heard this speech he became angry.
- (4). I must have been (gone) there before, but I do not know the place.
- (5). Please go and see, if† he is there.
- (6). Just come here and read this letter.
- (7). Please prepare some tea.
- (8). Dinner is not ready.
- (9). Bring breakfast at 8 o'clock.
- (10). As soon as he had written this letter, he went away.
- (11). Please clean this knife and fork
- (12). Do you know that place?

EXERCISE V—(B).

- (1). *Chhuri aur khaṭā sāf karkī fauran idhar lāo.*
- (2). *Aj shām ko chār bajē chā twīggyār karkī idhar lānā.*
- (3). *Jo kucch uoh bole, sunnā.*
- (4). *Lakṛī lākar khānā banāo.*
- (5). *Chhuri banāme vālā idhar nahīn hai, bāzār gayā hai.*
- (6). *Yeh bāt suntō hī tum khaṭā hogay.*
- (7). *Zarā bāt sunnā.*
- (8). *Pahlē udhar jāo phir yakhān ānā.*
- (9). *Aj roṣṭicālā udhar nahīn jāegā.*
- (10). *Dekhnā ! ham hāzrī āṣṭh bajē khānagē*

* Vide sentence 12th Exercise 2 A.

† When "if" in English can be substituted by "whether", translate "if" by "kīh" meaning "that" or "āyā" meaning "whether."

LESSON 6.

SUMMARY OF THE VERB.

Infinitive "to fall" = *girnā* گرن.

The tense	is formed by adding	to the	Examples.
Ordinary Imperative.	"O."	Root.	<i>gīro</i> = fall (you)
Polite Imperative.	"īyē."	"	<i>gīriyē</i> = please fall.
Future.	<i>ūngā, īgā, ēgā, īngē, ogē, ēngē.</i>	"	<i>main gīrūngā</i> = I shall or will fall.
Subjunctive (a)	<i>ūn, ē, ē, ēn, o, ēn.</i>	"	<i>main gīrūn</i> = I may fall.
• Present Participle.	"tā."	"	<i>girtā</i> = falling.
Present.	Present tense of "honā."	Present Participle.	<i>main girtā hūn</i> = I am falling.
Imperfect.	Past tense of "honā."	"	<i>main girtā thā</i> = I was falling
Conditional.	"agar" and "to."	"	<i>agar main girtā</i> } If I had fallen
Past Participle.	"A" or "ya."	Root.	<i>gīrā</i> = fell or fallen.
Past ^(b)	Using the	Past Participle (alone).	<i>main gīrā</i> = I fell.
Perfect.	Present tense of "honā."	"	<i>main gīrā hūn</i> = I have fallen.
Pluperfect.	Past tense of "honā."	"	<i>main gīrā thā</i> = I had fallen.
Past Dubious.	Future tense of "honā."	"	<i>main gīrā hūngā</i> } I must have fallen.

Noun of Agency = *gīrnē wālā* = One who falls.
 Adverbial Phrase = *gītē hī* = As soon as (he) fell.
 Don't fall = *mat* gīro* or *nāh gīro*.

(a). The subjunctive is used to indicate "uncertainty or doubt, in asking permission or giving advice."

(b). Past tense is definite, the Imperfect tense is indefinite. English sentences such as "a man lived there" are better translated by the Imperfect tense in Hindustani, (i. e., a man was living there); but past tense should be used when a definite time is stated.

* "mat" مٹ is used in the Ordinary Imperative (form) "nāh نہ" with the Present Subjunctive and Conditional, also with all forms of Imperatives to indicate "politeness;" *nahin* نہیں is used in all other cases.

VOCABULARY 6.

To cook	= <i>pakānā</i>	پکا	Egg	= <i>andā</i>	انڈا
To boil	= <i>utālnū</i>	آبالا	Either-or	= <i>yā lo-yā</i>	یا تو-یا
Late or delay	} = <i>dēr</i> (دیر)	دیر	Neither-nor	= <i>nāh to-nāh</i>	نہ تو-نہ
			Ever	= <i>kabhī</i>	کبھی
To be late	= <i>dēr-sē-ānā</i>	دیر سے آنا	Sometimes	= <i>kabhī kabhī</i>	کبھی کبھی
Quarrel	= <i>jhagrā</i>	جھگڑا	Never	= <i>kabhī nahīn</i>	کبھی نہیں
To quarrel	= <i>jhagrā karnā</i>	جھگڑا کرنا	Paper	= <i>kāghaz</i>	کاغذ
Butter	= <i>makkhan</i>	مکھن	Far	= <i>dūr</i> (دور)	دور
Fish	= <i>machhī</i>	مچھلی	Early	= <i>sawērē</i>	سورے
Soup	= <i>shorbā</i>	شوربا	Salt	= <i>namak</i>	نمک
Rice	= <i>chāwal</i>	چاول			

IDIOM.

Early in the morning = *subah sawērē* صبح سورے

EXERCISE VI.—(A).

1. Come early to-morrow morning.
2. Please don't be late*.
3. Please bring some butter to-morrow evening.
4. I like† either fish or soup.
5. He neither sends† a book nor writes a letter.
6. Do you ever go there?
7. He has never been here before.
8. Please cook some rice every day.
9. Boil these eggs and bring some salt.
10. Had you come yesterday, you would (or should) have seen the paper.
11. I went there the day before yesterday.
12. We had not gone far.
13. They quarrel sometimes.

EXERCISE VI.—(B).

1. *Tum khānā dēr sē pakātē ho.*
2. *Woh ande mat utālo.*
3. *Kal subah sawērē ānā aur dēr nah karnā.*
4. *Yih makkhan bahut kharāb hai, kal kuchh achhā lānā.*
5. *Tum chā yā to tīn bajē lātē ho yā kabhī kabhī pāñch bajē, thik chār bajē kabhī nahīn lātē.*
6. *Zarā aur^(a) dūr jāō.*
7. *Yahān jhagrā mat karo.*
8. *Phir ham khaṛā hojāēngē.*
9. *Nāh to āj yahān chhuri hai nah kāñfā.*
10. *Aur^(a) darākhṭ kājo.*

* But don't be late in cooking = *dēr-sē-mat pakānā* دیر سے مت پکا.

† Place the Verb at the end of the first clause.

e. g., *main yā to machhī pasand kartā hūn yā shorbā*

میں یا تو مچھلی پسند کرتا ہوں یا شوربا

(a). "aur" means "and, other, more, different, etc."

LESSON 7.

NOUNS AND THEIR NOMINATIVE PLURALS.

23. The articles in English "a, an and the" are not translated in Hindustani except when particular emphasis is required. Then "a or an" = "ek," and "the" = "woh."

24. A noun is the name of any person, place or thing.

25. In grammar, the difference of sex in Nature, is called "Gender."

26. In Hindustani, as in English, the names of males are of the Masculine Gender, and those of females, of the feminine gender, but there is no Neuter Gender.

27. To determine the gender of lifeless objects, the principal rule is that nouns ending in (i, t or ish) are feminine, those ending in any other letter are mostly masculine.

(Exceptions to this should be carefully noted.)

28. A noun by itself (i. e., without any preposition) is said to be in the "Nominative Case." e. g. a man

29. Masculine nouns ending in any letter except (A), remain unchanged for plural (nominative).

E.g. A man or men = *ādmi* آدمی

Those that end in (A), change (A) into (E), e.g. a boy = *larḱā* لڑکا, Boys = *larḱē* لڑکے

30. Feminine nouns add (AN) if they end in (i), and add (EN) if they end in any other letter, to form their plural (nominative).

Examples.

A girl	= <i>larḱī</i> ^(a) لڑکی	Girls	= <i>larḱiān</i> لڑکیاں
A thing	= <i>chiz</i> چیز	Things	= <i>chizēn</i> چیزیں

Note.—In all the vocabularies hereafter, only feminine nouns of other endings than (i, t or ish) are marked (f). Therefore nouns if not marked are all masculine except those ending in (i, t or ish).

VOCABULARY 7.

To remove	= <i>haḱānā</i> ہٹانا	Child	= <i>bachchā</i> بچہ
To open	= <i>kholnā</i> کھولنا	That (as a conj.)	} = <i>kih</i> کہ
To shut	= <i>band karnā</i> بند کرنا		
Hope	= <i>umīd</i> (f) امید	To fall	= <i>gīrnā</i> گرنا
To hope	= <i>umīd karnā</i> امید کرنا	Table	= <i>mēz</i> (f) میز
Son	= <i>bēḱā</i> بیٹا	Chair	= <i>kursī, chauḱī</i> کرسی-چوکی
Daughter	= <i>bēḱī</i> بیٹی	Door	= <i>darwāzā</i> دروازہ

(a) Masculine nouns ending in (A) form their feminine nouns by changing (A) into (i).

e.g., Horse = *ghoṛā* گھوڑا

Mare = *ghoṛī* گھوڑی

Window	= <i>khirki</i>	کھڑکی	All three	= <i>tinon*</i>	تینوں
As, because	= <i>chūnki</i>	چونکہ	So or such	= <i>aisā</i>	ایسا
Therefore	= <i>iswāst*</i>	اسواست	At all, entirely,	} <i>bilkul</i>	بالکل
Both	= <i>donon</i>	دونوں	quite, absolutely		

IDIOMS.

I hope so	=	<i>umīd to† hai</i>	امید تو ہے
I think so	=	<i>khīyāl to† hai</i>	خیال تو ہے

EXERCISE VII—(A.)

1. The boys will read but the girls will sleep. (2). I shall not go there at all, but the servants will. (3). He neither cleans the knives nor the forks. (4). Just remove those tables and bring the chairs here. (5). Please open the doors or shut the windows. (6). Take these knives away, as they are not clean. (7). Because he has not come, therefore the children are going away. (8). Will he come this evening? (9). I hope so. (10). Do you think that the children will fall down? (11). I think so. (12). Both the sons and daughters† have gone out.

EXERCISE VII—(B.)

(1). *Donon bachchē arhē hain.* (2). *Woh darwāzē band karo, lekin yih khirkiān kholo.* (3). *Woh āg shām ko yahan āgā? umīd to ho.* (4). *Mezē aur kursiān sūf nahin hain, kharāl hain.* (5). *Iswāst ham wāpis bhōjēngē.* (6). *Yih larhē bilkul kōn nahin kartē.* (7). *Woh din bhar khelte hain.* (8). *Chūnki tum aisā kohtē ho, main ih aisā kahtā hūn.* (9). *Ham khīyāl kartē hain kih ham parson chalē jāēngē.*

kahnī (کہنی) = to say, to tell.

LESSON 8.**OBLIQUE CASES AND THEIR PLURALS.**

31. Words like "of, to, from, on," etc., are called prepositions in English, as they take their position before the Nouns they govern. In Hindustani they are placed after the Nouns and are therefore termed Postpositions.

* Add (on) to any number to mean "all so many" e. g. All the ten men = *dason ādmī* دس آدمی and so on.

† "to" is a particle of emphasis, there is no exact equivalent to it in English. It adds point to a speech.

‡ If the subjects are more than one, the verb agrees with the last one. But if the words *donon* دونوں = both, or *sab* سب = all, etc. are inserted, the verb is in the masculine plural.

EXAMPLES.

A servant	= <i>naukar</i>	نوکر	On a servant	= <i>naukar par</i>	نوکر پر
Of a servant	= <i>naukar kā</i>	نوکر کا	In a servant	= <i>naukar mēn</i>	نوکر میں
To a servant	= <i>naukar ko</i>	نوکر کو	Upto a servant	= <i>naukar tak</i>	نوکر تک
From a servant	= <i>naukar sē</i>	نوکر سے	By a servant	= <i>naukar nē</i>	نوکر نے
O servant = <i>ai naukar*</i>					
O نوکر!					

32. A Noun or Pronoun thus followed by a Postposition, is termed to be in the "Oblique Case." Therefore all the cases except the Nominative are "Oblique."

33. All Nouns, whether Masculine or Feminine remain unchanged before Postpositions in the Singular and add (on) ^(a) before Postpositions in the Plural, except Masculine Nouns ending in (A), which change (A) into (E) for the Oblique Singular and change (A) into (on) for the Oblique Plural.

EXAMPLES.

Singular.			Plural.		
Nom. A man	= <i>ādmī</i>	آدمی	Men	= <i>ādmī</i>	آدمی
Obliq. To a man	= <i>ādmī ko</i>	آدمی کو	To the men	= <i>ādmīon ko</i>	آدمیوں کو
Nom. A woman	= <i>aurat</i>	عورت	Women	= <i>auratōn</i>	عورتیں
Obliq. To a woman	= <i>aurat ko</i>	عورت کو	To the women	= <i>auratōn ko</i>	عورتوں کو
Nom. A son	= <i>bēṭā</i>	بیٹا	Sons	= <i>bēṭe</i>	بیٹے
Obliq. To a son	= <i>bēṭe ko</i>	بیٹے کو	To the sons	= <i>bēṭōn ko</i>	بیٹوں کو

34. The following Nouns are exceptions. They do not change (A) in the Oblique Singular, but add (on) to (A) for their Oblique Plurals, viz.

(1). River	= <i>daryā</i>	دریا	(4). Grand father	= <i>bābā</i>	باپا
(2). Uncle	= <i>chachā</i>	چچا	(5). God	= <i>khudā</i>	خدا
(8). A Raja	= <i>rājā</i>	راجا			

VOCABULARY 8.

To run	= <i>daṛnā</i>	دوڑنا	To rub	= <i>malnā</i>	ملا
To put, place	} <i>rakhnā</i>	رکھنا	To live, dwell	} <i>rahnā</i>	رہنا
or keep			To remain		
To die	= <i>marjānā</i>	مر جانا	Yes	= <i>hān</i>	هان

* The Vocative Singular is formed by prefixing (ai). The Vocative Plural is formed by prefixing (ai) and in addition suffixing (o) to the Singular.

e. g. O boy = *ai laṛke* اے لڑکے

O boys = *ai laṛko* اے لڑکے

(a). Never add (on) to a Noun except when followed by a Postposition.

Spoon	= <i>chamchā</i>	چمچا	Road	= <i>sarak (f)</i>	سڑک
Box	= <i>sandūq</i>	صندوق	Garden	= <i>bōghichā</i>	باغچه
Also	= <i>bhī</i>	بھی	Eleven	= <i>gyārōh</i>	گیارہ
Plain	= <i>maidān</i>	میدان	Twelve	= <i>lārāh</i>	بارہ
Person	= <i>shakhs</i>	شخص	Thirteen	= <i>terāh</i>	تیرہ
Every body	= <i>har shakhs</i>	ہر شخص	Fourteen	= <i>chaudāh</i>	چودہ
Shop	= <i>dūkān (f)</i>	دکان	Fifteen	= <i>pañdrāh</i>	پندرہ
Tent	= <i>tamlā</i>	ٹمبلہ	Sixteen	= <i>solāh</i>	سولہ
Hut	= <i>jhoppi</i>	جھوپڑی	Seventeen	= <i>satrāh</i>	سترہ
City or town	= <i>shahar</i>	شہر	Eighteen	= <i>athārāh</i>	اٹھارہ
Market	= <i>bāzār</i>	بازار	Nineteen	= <i>unīs</i>	انیس
	Twenty	= <i>bīs</i>		بیس	

EXERCISE VIII.—(A).

1. Give these 15 books to the Rājā. 2. We ran as far as (upto) the river. 3. Boys were playing on the plain. 4. Every body goes to the gardens to-day. 5. The boxes are in the houses. 6. This road leads (goes) to the market. 7. Two days ago twelve men died in the city. 8. Do you sleep in tents? 9. Yes! but some also sleep in huts. 10. Keep the spoons on the tables. 11. He has taken the wine away from the shops. 12. Do not rub butter on the chairs, boys!

EXERCISE VIII.—(B).

1. Woh dūkānēn thik āsh bajē band kartē haiṅ. 2. Tambūṅ mēn kaun rahtā hai. 3. Shahar mēn jhoppiān bahut sī haiṅ, lēkin lāghichē bilkul nahīn. 4. Har shakhs rāt ko maidān mēn sotā hai. 5. Yih sandūq band karkē sarak par rakkho. 6. Bāzār sē kuchh chīzēn lānā. 7. Daur kar chalo, ohistā mat jāo. 8. Kuchh chamchē bhī lānā. 9. Hān, yih makkhan roṣṭon par malo. 10. Agar tum kuchh nahīn khāogē, to kaun (کون) = who?

LESSON 9.

SUMMARY OF THE NOUN.

35. There is no article in Hindustani, nor is there a Neuter Gender. Feminine Nouns end in (i, t or ish), those with other endings are mostly masculine.

A noun with a postposition is termed to be in the oblique case, without a postposition in the Nominative Case. Masculine nouns ending in (A)* from their nominative plural by changing (A) into (E). Masculine Nouns ending in any other letter do not change in their nominative plural.

* Nouns ending in (A) are generally masculine.

Feminine nouns ending in (i) add (an), those ending in any other letter add (-en), to form their nominative plural. All nouns whether masculine or feminine remain unchanged for oblique cases singular, but add (on) for the oblique cases plural, except masculine nouns ending in (A), which change (A) into (E) for oblique cases singular and change (A) into (on) for oblique cases plural.

(Exceptions—*daryā* دریا *khudā* خدا *chachā* چچا *rājā* راجا and *bābā* بابا)

Vocative "O" = "Ai" and is a prefix, e.g., O boy = *ai laṛkē* اے لڑکے! vocative plurals add (o) in addition to the prefix (ai).

E.g. O men = *ai ādmio* اے آدمیو O boys = *ai laṛko* اے لڑکے

Change (A) of the Masculine Nouns into (i) to form their feminine nouns.

- Nouns do not change in the accusative case.

VOCABULARY 9.

To walk	= <i>chalnā</i>	چلنا	Clothes	= <i>kaprī</i>	کپڑے
To talk	= <i>bātēn karnā</i>	باتیں کرنا	Uniform	= <i>wardī</i>	واردی
To graze	= <i>charnā</i>	چرنا	Stupid, } fool or } foolish }	= <i>bē uaqūf</i>	بدوقوف
To run away	= <i>hhāg jānā</i>	بھاگ جانا			
To take off	= <i>utārnā</i>	اُتارنا	Way	= <i>rustā</i>	رستہ
To put on or } To wear }	= <i>pahannā</i>	پہنا	Twenty-one	= <i>ikkīs</i>	ایکیس
On foot			Twenty-two	= <i>lā-īs</i>	بائیس
Loudly	= <i>zor se</i>	زور سے	Twenty-three	= <i>te-īs</i>	تئیس
Many	= <i>bahut se</i>	بہت سے	Twenty-four	= <i>chan-līs</i>	چوبیس
Village	= <i>gāon</i>	گاؤں	Twenty-five	= <i>pachhīs</i>	پچیس
People	= <i>log</i>	لوگ	Twenty-six	= <i>chh-līs</i>	چھبیس
Forest	= <i>jaṅgal</i>	جنگل	Twenty-seven	= <i>satā-īs</i>	سٹائیس
Cantonments	= <i>chhāonī</i>	جہازنی	Twenty-eight	= <i>aṭhā-īs</i>	اٹھائیس
Field	= <i>khēt</i>	کھیت	Twenty-nine	= <i>untīs</i>	اُنڈیس
Cloth	= <i>kaprā</i>	کپڑا	Thirty	= <i>tīs</i>	تیس

IDIOMS.

To walk on foot	= <i>paidal chalnā</i>	پیدل چلنا
How far?	= <i>kitnī dūr</i>	کتنی دُور

EXERCISE IX—(A).

1. There are not many houses in the village. 2. People from the forest are coming to towns. 3. How far is it from here to (upto) the village? 4. Boys! You are very stupid. 5. This way leads to the Cantonments. 6. They walk on foot. 7. The girls were talking loudly. 8. The mares are grazing in the fields. 9. If you had not

*Add "se سے" to a noun to convert it into an adverb "zor زور" as a noun means "strength or force."

come, the servants would have run away. 10. Please take off those clothes and put on this uniform. 11. I shall go to the river this evening. 12. Water comes from rivers.

EXERCISE IX—(B).

1. *Kal yih sab log idhar jānch jāṅge.* 2. *Chhānion mēn bahut sē log wardī pahantī haiṅ.* 3. *Zor zor sē lāṭh mat karo, āhīstā holo.* 4. *Woh log bahut bē-waqūf haiṅ.* 5. *Yih rastā khēṭon ko jāṭū hai yā nahīn?* 6. *Tum har roz kīnī dūr paidal chaltē ho?* 7. *Gāon kē log ham ko ^(u) dēkh kar jāṅgal mēn bhāg gayē.* 8. *(Ghorē khēṭon mēn charēṅgē.* 9. *Daryā kīnī dūr hai?* 10. *Woh rastā achchhā hai yā kharāb?*

LESSON 10.

PRONOUNS.

36. A Pronoun is a word used in place of a Noun, e. g.

Nominatives.

I	= <i>main</i>	میں	We	= <i>ham</i>	ہم
Thou	= <i>tū</i>	تو	You	= <i>tum</i>	تم
He, she, it	= <i>woh</i>	وہ	They	= <i>woh</i>	وہ

Possessives or Genitives ⁽ⁱ⁾.

My, mine or of me	= <i>mērā</i>	میرا	Our, ours or of us	= <i>hamārā</i>	ہمارا
Thy, thine or of thee	= <i>tērā</i>	تیرا	Your, yours or of you	= <i>tumhārā</i>	تمہارا
His or of him	} = <i>uskā</i>	اُسکا	Their, theirs or of them	= <i>unkā</i>	اُنکا
Her or of her					
Its or of it					

Accusatives ^(c) (i. e., Objectives).

Me (or to me)	= <i>mujhē</i>	مجھے	Us (or to us)	= <i>hamēn</i>	ہمیں
Thee (or to thee)	= <i>tujhē</i>	تجھے	You (or to you)	= <i>tumhēn</i>	تمہیں
Him, her (or to him, to her etc.)	} = <i>usē</i>	اُسے	Them or to them	} = <i>unhēn</i>	اُنہیں

(a). "Ko" is added to an object in order to emphasize or particularize it.

(b). Note that only the 3rd Person Genitive requires (*kā*), the 1st and 2nd Person Singular and Plural ends in the termination (*rā*).

(c). 1. These accusative forms of Pronouns are preferably used when there is already one "ko" mentioned in the sentence.

2. Nouns in the accusative are the same in form as in the Nominative.

* Always use "*āp* آپ" instead of "*tum* تم" except when addressing menials. "*āp* آپ" takes the Verb in the 3rd person plural.

e. g., Will you go? = *āp jāṅgē* آپ جائیگے

Datives (d).

To me	= <i>muḡh ko</i>	مجھ کو	To us	= <i>ham ko</i>	ہم کو
To thee	= <i>tuḡh ko</i>	تجھ کو	To you	= <i>tum ko</i>	تم کو
To him, to her, to it	} <i>us ko</i>	اُس کو	To them	= <i>un ko</i>	اُن کو

Demonstratives (e).

This	= <i>yih</i>	یہ	These	= <i>yih</i>	یہ
To this	= <i>is-ko</i>	اِس کو	To these	= <i>in-ko</i>	اِن کو
That	= <i>woh</i>	وہ	Those	= <i>woh</i>	وہ
To that	= <i>us-ko</i>	اُس کو	To those	= <i>un-ko</i>	اُن کو

VOCABULARY 10.

Room	= <i>kanrā</i>	کمرہ	Stable	= <i>astabal</i>	استابل
Office	= <i>daftar</i>	دفتر	Thirty-one	= <i>ik-katis</i>	اکیس
Mile	= <i>mīl</i>	میل	Thirty-two	= <i>battis</i>	بیس
Bridge	= <i>pul</i>	پل	Thirty-three	= <i>tē-tis</i>	تیس
Now	= <i>ab</i>	اب	Thirty-four	= <i>chaur-tis</i>	چونتیس
Just now	= <i>abhi</i>	ابھی	Thirty-five	= <i>pañtīs</i>	پینتیس
Ground	= <i>zamin (f)</i>	زمین	Thirty-six	= <i>chhe-tis</i>	چھتیس
Shoes	= <i>jūtān</i>	جو تپن	Thirty seven	= <i>sūntīs</i>	سینتیس
Pen	= <i>qalam</i>	قلم	Thirty eight	= <i>aṭh-tis</i>	اٹھتیس
Meat	= <i>gosht (m)</i>	گوشت	Thirty-nine	= <i>untālīs</i>	آنناہیس
Only	= <i>siraf</i>	صرف	Forty	= <i>chālīs</i>	چالیس

IDIOM-

A pair of shoes = *ēk jorī jūti* ایک جوتی جوتی

EXERCISE X.-(A)

1. Bring him in this room. 2. I was not well* yesterday and therefore did not go to that office. 3. It is only two miles from this

(d). The remaining declension is as follows:—

From me	= <i>muḡh-se</i>	مجھ سے	In me	= <i>muḡh-mēn</i>	مجھ میں
On me	= <i>muḡh-par</i>	مجھ پر	Up to me	= <i>muḡh-tak</i>	مجھ تک

(e). When the Demonstrative Pronouns are used as Adjectives, their case endings (*kā, ko, etc.*), are placed after the Nouns qualified (e.g., to that man = *us ādmī ko* اُس آدمی کو), but when they are employed as Personal Pronouns, the case endings come immediately after them, (e.g., to that = *us ko* اُس کو).

* "Well" as an "Adjective" or as an "Interjection" = *achhā* اچھا, but as an "Adverb," it is translated by *achhī-tarah-sē* اچھی طرح سے or *khush* خوب.

place to that bridge. 4. Give me a book. 5. Put all the clothes in those boxes. 6. He will shut the doors just now. 7. Sit on the ground there and clean the shoes. 8. Please bring them a pair of shoes. 9. Take away the horses to those stables. 10. I will give you two pens. 11. Take away this meat and bring me some water. 12. Have you ever been (gone) to that forest.

EXERCISE X.—(B).

1. *Yih kamrā hamirā hai, tumhūrā nahīn.* 2. *Bāzār mēṁ gosht kharāb hai, mujhū achhī gosht lānā.* 3. *Us daftar kā darwāzā band hai, khulā nahīn.* 4. *Astabal idhar sē siraf ek mīl dūr hai.* 5. *Daryā kā pul bahut dūr nahīn.* 6. *Yih qalam lējākar mēz par rakkho.* 7. *Abhi usko ek jorī jūti do.* 8. *Is jagūh zamīn kharāb hai.* 9. *Yahān khēt bilkul nahīn.* 10. *Woh kām achhī tarah sē kārnā.*

Band = closed, shut.

Khulā (𐎧𐎠𐎢𐎡𐎢𐎠𐎢𐎠) = open.

LESSON 11.

PRONOUNS—(continued).

37.	Interrogatives. ^(a)		Relatives. ^(b)	
	Singular	Plural.	Singular	Plural
Who	= <i>kauṇ</i> ^(c) ڪون	<i>kauṇ</i> ڪو	<i>jō</i> جو	<i>jō</i> جو
Whose or of whom	= <i>kiskā</i> ڪيس	<i>kinkū</i> ڪين	<i>jiskā</i> ڪيس	<i>jinkā</i> ڪين
Whom or to whom	= <i>kisko</i> ڪيس	<i>kinko</i> ڪو	<i>jisko</i> ڪو	<i>jinko</i> ڪو
What	= <i>kyā</i> ^(d) ڪي	<i>kyā</i> ڪي	<i>jō</i> جو	<i>jō</i> جو
To what	= <i>kisko</i> ڪيس	<i>kinko</i> ڪو	<i>jisko</i> ڪو	<i>jinko</i> ڪو
Which	= <i>kauṇsā</i> ^(d) ڪونسا	<i>kauṇsā</i> ڪو	<i>jō</i> جو	<i>jō</i> جو

(a). Interrogatives are used when a question is asked. Relatives are used when relating to something previously mentioned.

(b). Change the initial “k” of the interrogative into “j” to form the relative.

(c). “*Kauṇ* ڪو” is used both for persons and things and means “who, which or what.” “*Kyā* ڪي” is used only for things or actions but not for persons.

(d). “*Kauṇsā* ڪونسا” = “which one” expecting a more definite answer than “*kauṇ* ڪو”

To the above list may be added—

Interrogatives.		Relatives.	
When	= <i>kab</i> کب	<i>jāb</i>	جب
How or what sort of (<i>adj.</i>)	= <i>kaisā</i> کیسا	<i>jaisā</i>	جیسا
(What sort of	= <i>kis qisam kā</i> (کس قسم کا)		
How or in what way (<i>adv.</i>)	= <i>kaisē</i> کیسے	<i>jaisē</i>	جیسے
(In what way	= <i>kis tarah</i> (کس طرح)		
How much	= <i>kitnā</i> or <i>kitnī</i> ^(a) کتنی or کتنا	<i>jitnā</i> or <i>jitnī</i> جتنی or جتنا	
How many	= <i>kitnē</i> or <i>kitni</i> ^(a) کتنے or کتنی	<i>jitnē</i> or <i>jitni</i> جتنے or جتنی	
Where	= <i>kahān</i> or <i>kidhar</i> کہاں or کدھر	<i>jahān</i> or <i>jidhar</i> جہاں or جدھر	
Why	= <i>kyūn</i> کیوں		
What for	= <i>kiswāstē</i> کس واسطے		

.38. Indefinite pronouns are :—

(1). *Koi* ^(b) کوئی = any, some one or any one. “*Koi*” کوئی changes into “*kisī*” کسی before postpositions, e.g. To anyone = *kisī ko* کسی کو.

(2). “*Kuchh*” کچھ = “some, something or anything,” and is used both for number and quantity. “*Kuchh*” کچھ is plural when referring to “number” and is singular when referring to “quantity,” e.g.

There are some men outside = *kuchh ādmī bāhar hai* کچھ آدمی باہر ہیں

There is some water here = *yahān kuchh pānī hai* یہاں کچھ پانی ہے

“*B'az*” بعض can be substituted for *kuchh* کچھ when referring to “number” but not “quantity,” e.g.

Some men = *kuchh ādmī* or *b'az ādmī* کچھ آدمی or بعض آدمی

VOCABULARY 11.

Forty-one	= <i>iktālīs</i> اکتالیس	Fifty-one	= <i>ikāwan</i> اکارن
Forty-two	= <i>bayālīs</i> بیالیس	Fifty-two	= <i>lāwan</i> بارن
Forty-three	= <i>tētālīs</i> تبتالیس	Fifty-three	= <i>tarēpan</i> ترپن
Forty-four	= <i>charwālīs</i> چواریس	Fifty-four	= <i>charwan</i> چورن
Forty-five	= <i>pāintālīs</i> پینتالیس	Fifty-five	= <i>pachpan</i> پچپن
Forty-six	= <i>chhiyālīs</i> چھیالیس	Fifty-six	= <i>chhipan</i> چھپن
Forty-seven	= <i>saintālīs</i> سینتالیس	Fifty-seven	= <i>satāwan</i> ستارن
Forty-eight	= <i>aṭhālīs</i> اٹھالیس	Fifty-eight	= <i>aṭhāwan</i> اٹھارن
Forty-nine	= <i>unchās</i> انچاس	Fifty-nine	= <i>unsaṣṭh</i> آنسٹھ
Fifty	= <i>pachās</i> پچاس	Sixty	= <i>sāṣṭh</i> ساٹھ
Time or turn	= <i>daf'ah</i> (f) دفعہ	A week	= <i>haftā</i>

(a). *Kitnī* کتنی = “how much or how many” is used before feminine nouns.

(b). “*Koi*” کوئی also means “about” (before a number) and does not change into “*kisī*” کسی in this respect, e.g., In about five days = *koī pānch din mēn* کوئی پانچ دن میں

IDIOMS.

How many times a day	= <i>din men kitnī daf'ah</i>	دن میں کتنی دفعہ
In about a week	= <i>koī ēk haftē men</i>	کوئی ایک ہفتے میں
How far	= <i>kitnī dūr</i>	کتنی دُور

EXERCISE XI—(A).

1. What are you doing? 2. Where do you live? 3. Who is he and why has he come here? 4. How many days will you stay here? 5. How is your brother? 6. How many times a day do you dine? 7. How far is the market and which is the way to it? 8. The man who came here yesterday has gone to-day. 9. Where is the book which you brought the day before yesterday? 10. Is anybody here? 11. There is no one here. 12. Is this your house? 13. He will arrive in about a week.

EXERCISE XI—(B).

1. *Udhar tum kitnī daf'ah gayē hai.* 2. *Haftē men main ēk daf'ah yahān ātā hūn.* 3. *Woh kyā māngtā hai.* 4. *Bazār kidhar hai aur yahān se kitnī dūr hai?* 5. *Tumhārā ghar kuusā hai?* 6. *Koī hai?* 7. *Yahān koī nahīn.* 8. *Koī kitāb bhī yahān nahīn jo main tumhēn dūn.* 9. *Woh āj zurā der se pahunch gayā.* 10. *Kal ēk shukhs bhī maidān ko nahīn gayā.* 11. *Uskā nām kyā thā?*

māngnā (مانگنا) = to want (for concrete things).

nām (نام) = name.

LESSON 12.**39. SUMMARY OF PRONOUNS.**

The Nominative form :—

<i>main</i> میں (I) changes into	<i>mujh</i> مجھ for the Oblique.
<i>tū</i> تُو (thou) changes into	<i>tujh</i> تجھ for the Oblique.
<i>woh</i> وہ (ho, etc.) changes into	<i>us</i> اُس for the Oblique.
<i>woh</i> وہ (they) changes into	<i>un</i> اُن for the Oblique.
<i>yih</i> یہ (this) changes into	<i>is</i> اس for the Oblique.
<i>yih</i> یہ (these) changes into	<i>in</i> ان for the Oblique.
<i>kaun</i> کون (who? s.) changes into	<i>kis</i> کس for the Oblique.
<i>kaun</i> کون (who? p.) changes into	<i>kin</i> کی for the Oblique.
<i>jo</i> جو (who s.) changes into	<i>j's</i> جس for the Oblique.
<i>jo</i> جو (who p.) changes into	<i>jin</i> جن for the Oblique.
<i>koī</i> کوئی (any one) changes into	<i>kisī</i> کسی for the Oblique.
<i>kyā</i> کیا (what) changes into	<i>kis</i> کس for the Oblique.

The 1st and 2nd person Singular and plural genitive ends in (rā).

The 3rd person Singular and plural genitive requires (kā).

Demonstrative pronouns if used as adjectives take the postpositions after the noun qualified. If used as pronouns they take the postpositions immediately after them. The indefinite pronoun "kuchh کچھ" does not change and can be substituted by "b'at بعض."

kaunsa کونسا = "which one" expects a definite reply.

kyā کیا can not be used for persons.

Change the 1st "k" of an interrogative to form the relative.

The Accusative form of a pronoun is preferable to the dative.

VOCABULARY 12.

To get up.	} = <i>uṣhnā</i>	اُٹھنا	To lift up	= <i>uṣhānā</i>	اُٹھانا
To rise			To kill	= <i>mārḍālnā</i>	مار ڈالنا
To die	= <i>marjānā</i>	مر جانا	Animal	= <i>jānwar</i>	جانور
Hour	= <i>ghaṇṭā</i>	گھنٹا	Cow	= <i>gāu</i>	گائے
Time	= <i>waqt (m)</i>	وقت	Mail or post (f)	= <i>dāk</i>	ڈاک
Train	= <i>rēl-gāri</i>	ریل گاڑی	Post office	{ = <i>dāk ghar</i> or ڈاک گھر = <i>dāk khānā</i> ڈاک خانہ	ڈاک گھر
Noise	= <i>shor</i>	سور			ڈاک خانہ
Hill	= <i>ahār</i>	پہاڑ	Post man	= <i>dāk-wālā</i>	ڈاک والا
Mail train	= <i>dāk gāri</i>	ڈاک گاڑی	Stone	= <i>paththar</i>	پتھر
Carriage	= <i>gāri</i>	گاڑی	Address	= <i>patā</i>	پتہ
Examination	= <i>imtihan</i>	امتحان	Successful	= <i>kāmyāb</i>	کامیاب
	To want or	} = <i>chāhnā</i>			
	To wish		چاہنا		

IDIOM.

At what time = kis-waqt کس وقت

EXERCISE XII.—(A).

1. What is your name and what do you want? 2. Whose house is that? Is it yours? 3. When will he come back? 4. What time do you get up? 5. How many hours a day do you sleep? 6. At what time does the mail train arrive? 7. Don't make a noise when* I am writing letters. 8. He went to the hills where he died. 9. What sort of an animal is this? 10. Is this a horse or a cow? 11. What is the time now? 12. Where is the post office? 13. Who will lift

* If the first clause begins with "jab جب," the second clause must begin with "to" "تو" ["to" = then, and is a co-relative]. The conditional clause in Hindustani is always placed first.

this stone? 14. Do you know his address? 15. He was* successful in his examination.

EXERCISE XII—(B).

1. Main har roz subah pīnch bajē ushtī hīn. 2. Dāk wālā dāk khānē sē kitnē bajē chaltā hai? 3. Dāk kis waqt ātī hai? 4. Bēl gārī kitnē bajē jāti hai? 5. Simlā pahār tak rēl gārī kitnē ghanṭē men pahunchti hai? 6. Woh pathhar wahīn sē mat ushāo. 7. Tumko uskā patā m'alūm hai? 8. Ab kyā waqt hai? 9. Itnā shor mat karo 10. Dēkho! do ghanṭē mēn idhar ākar is kāgaz par apnā patā lekhnā. 11. Tum ko yeh bāt kaisē m'alūm hī.

M'alūm (معلوم) = known, I know = mujh ko m'alūm hai.

Itnā (اِنّا) = so much or so great

LESSON 13.

MASCULINE POSTPOSITIONS. (a)

40.

Near = pās or nazdik	دس-نزدیک	Outside = bāhar	دہر
For = wāstē or lī	واسطے-لئے	With = sūth	ساتھ
After = h'ad	بعد	Below = nīchī	نیچے
Behind = pichhā	پچھے	Before = āgē, sāmne (b)	آگے سامنے
Above = ūpar	اوپر		
Inside = andar	اندر	or pahlē	پہلے

* When "was" in English means "became," translate "was" by "huā ہوا" otherwise by "thā تھا."

(a). When using any of these postpositions after a noun (or a pronoun in the 3rd person singular or plural) the word "kē کے" must be inserted between the noun (or pronoun) and the postposition.

EXAMPLES.

Outside the room	= hamrē kē bāhar	کمرے کے باہر
Near them	= unkē pās	اُن کے پاس
With him	= us kē sūth	اُس کے ساتھ

But when using them after a pronoun in the 1st or 2nd person singular or plural, change the ending (rā) into (rē), e.g.

Near me	= mērē pās	میرے پاس
For you	= tumhārē-wāstē	تمہارے واسطے
Before us	= hamārē sāmne	ہمارے سامنے

- (b) sāmne سامنے is used for place.
pahlē پہلے is used for time.
āgē آگے is used for place and time.

According to	= <i>māfiq</i>	موافق	Except	= <i>śivā</i>	سوا
Instead of	= <i>badlē</i>	بدلے	Without	= <i>baghair</i>	بغیر
Equal to	= <i>barābar</i>	برابر	Beyond	= <i>parē</i>	پرے
In the middle of	= <i>bīch</i>	بیچ	Between	= <i>darmīyān</i>	درمیان
On account of	= <i>sabab</i>	سبب	Besides	= <i>ilāwā</i>	علاوہ

41. Feminine Postpositions. (a)

Towards	= <i>taraf</i>	طرف	Concerning or	} = <i>bābat</i>	باب
Like or in the manner of	= <i>tarah</i>	طرح	about.		

VOCABULARY 13.

Price	= <i>qimat</i>	قیمت
Trouble	= <i>taklīf</i> (f)	تکلیف
To trouble	= <i>taklīf-dēnā</i>	تکلیف دینا
To trouble (one's self)	= <i>taklīf-uṭhānā</i> *	تکلیف اُٹھانا
War	= <i>larāi</i>	لڑائی

* "Uṭhānā اُٹھانا" metaphorically means "to suffer."

EXERCISE XIII—(A).

1. Is there any letter for me? 2. No! There is one for Mr. Brown. 3. Come with us to the shop. 4. We won't go without you. 5. He was writing near me at the table. 6. The road near the market goes to the city. 7. Do it like this. 8. The road which leads towards the forest, lies (is) between those houses. 9. Put the book under the table and not upon it. 10. This book is equal to that one in price. 11. We went across the river before 10 o'clock. 12. Do you know anything about him? 13. Don't trouble yourself. 14. These people give much trouble on account of war

EXERCISE XIII—(B).

1. *Us ghar kī taraf jākar dēkho kīh wahāñ koi ādmī baithā hai yā nahīñ?* 2. *Tumhārē sūnnē kitnē log is raste sē gayē haiñ?* 3. *Tum in sab ko jāntē ho?* 4. *Batāo woh kaun kaun thē, aur kis taraf gayē?*

(a). These require "kī کی" instead of "kō کو" and the ending "rī" instead of "rē."

SAMPLES.

Towards the house	= <i>ghar kī taraf</i>	گھر کی طرف
Like me	= <i>mērī tarah</i>	میری طرح
About them	= <i>unkī bābat</i>	انکی باب

5. *Hamīri tarah tum bhī chalē āo.* 6. *Merē liē taklif nah kiyyē, main yahan bahut achhā hūn.* 7. *Do gharṭē b'ād mērē ghar ānā.* 8. *Is pahār kē ūpar mat jāo, nichē jāo aur dēkho kīh wahān kitnē ādmī haiṅ?* 9. *Chār ādmīon kē sīvā wahān aur koi bhī nah thā.* 10. *Ham un ādmīon kē sāth jāṅgē, unke baghair nahīn jāṅgē.*

LESSON 14.

POSS.

42. Possession in English is either expressed by the use of "of" or "'s" e.g. (a) The horse of Mr. Smith.

(b) Mr. Smith's horse.

Note that while in (a) the object possessed comes first and the possessor after, in (b) the position of words is quite the opposite, i.e., the possessor comes first, the object possessed next, intervened by the possessive sign "'s."

The construction of a possessive clause in Hindustani is exactly like that of (b). Therefore when translating an English sentence containing "of," the order of words should be reversed, or in other words the "of" should be changed into the apostrophe "s" construction.

EXAMPLE.

The horse of Mr. Smith = Mr. Smith's horse =

Smith Sāhib kā ghorā سید صاحب کا گھوڑا

43. (a) The genitive sign "kā ک" (as in *uskā* اُسکا = his, *unkā* اُنکا = their), or the ending "rā ر" (as in *mērā* میرا = my, *hamārā* ہمارا = our, *tērā* تیرا = thy and *tumhārā* تمہارا = your) changes its last (A) into (E or I) in agreement with the object possessed (regardless of the possessor).

(b). "Kā ک" and the ending "rā ر" are used when the object possessed is masculine nominative singular, e. g.

My horse = *mērā ghorā* میرا گھوڑا His house = *uskā ghar* اُسکا گھر

(c). But "kā ک" and the ending "rā ر" change into "kē کے or rē رے" before masculine nouns not in the nominative singular.

EXAMPLE.

To my horse = *mērē ghorē ko* میرے گھوڑے کو

My horses = *mērē ghorē* میرے گھوڑے

To my horses = *mērē ghoron ko* میرے گھوڑوں کو

(d). "Kā ک" and the ending "rā ر" change into "kī or rī" before all feminine nouns regardless of Number and Case.

EXAMPLES.

My mare	=	mēri ghorī	میری گھڑی
To my mare	=	mēri ghorī ko	میری گھڑی کو
My mares	=	mēri ghorīāṇ	میری گھڑیاں
To my mares	=	mēri ghorīāṇ ko	میری گھڑیوں کو

44. All the possessives must be translated by "اپنا" (*apnā*) or *apni* (اپنی) when they refer to the subject of the sentence and appear in the same clause, e.g.

He reads his book = *woh apni kitāb parhṭā hai* وہ اپنی کتاب پڑھتا ہے

VOCABULARY 14.

To keep awake or to wake up	} <i>jāgnā</i>	جاگنا	O. C.	{ <i>hamān afsar sāhīb</i>	گمان افسر صاحب
To awake	= <i>jagānā</i>	جاگنا	Bungallow	= <i>banglā</i>	بنگلہ
Name	= <i>nām</i>	نام	Telegraph office	= <i>tārghā</i>	تار گھر
Language	= <i>zabān (f)</i>	زبان	Sixty-one	= <i>ikṣaṭh</i>	ایکسٹھ
Country	= <i>mulk</i>	ملک	Sixty-two	= <i>bāṣaṭh</i>	باسٹھ
Key	= <i>chābi</i>	چابی	Sixty-three	= <i>trēsaṭh</i>	تريسٹھ
Pocket	= <i>jeb (f)</i>	جیب	Sixty-four	= <i>chaṇsaṭh</i>	چونسٹھ
Order	= <i>hukam</i>	حکم	Sixty-five	= <i>pañṇsaṭh</i>	پینسٹھ
Owner	= <i>mālik</i>	مالک	Sixty-six	= <i>shṛīṣṭaṭh</i>	شریسٹھ
Soldier	= <i>sipāhī</i>	سپاہی	Sixty-seven	= <i>satāsaṭh</i>	ساتاسٹھ
King	= <i>bādhāh</i>	بادشاہ	Sixty-eight	= <i>aṭhṣaṭh</i>	اٹھسٹھ
Prince	= <i>shāh-zāda</i>	شاہ زادہ	Sixty-nine	= <i>unhattar</i>	اُنہتر
Clerk	= <i>bābū sāhib†</i>	بابو صاحب	Seventy	= <i>sattar</i>	ستر
Gentleman	= <i>sāhib†</i>	صاحب			

EXERCISE XIV—(A).

1. She was the mother of those children. 2. Are you the owner** of that house? 3. We were in the house of those soldiers three days ago. 4. The name of the king was "A" and that†† of the

* (a) *Apnā* (اپنا) also means "one's own" and in this sense it is to be used in addition to the possessive pronoun, as in English, e.g.

This is my own house = *yih mērā apnā ghar hai* یہ میرا اپنا گھر ہے

(b). "Your" is always translated by "*apnā*" (اپنا) in an Imperative Clause, e.g. Bring your dog = *apnā kuttā lāo* اپنا کتا لاؤ

† "The *bāboo*" or "the *munshī*" is in Hindustani

"*Bāboo sāhib, munshī sāhib* or *munshī jī.*" It is not polite to say merely "*bāboo* or *munshī*" without the words "*sāhib* or *jī.*"

† "Sāhib" (صاحب) requires the verb in 3rd person plural.

** "You" the subject being plural in Hindustani, the predicate must also be in the plural.

†† Repeat the word "name" instead of "that."

prince was "B." 5. He is not the servant of your friend. 6. That boy's father is a clerk in the Post Office. 7. Those gentlemen's clothes are in the boxes of my brother. 8. The father of those girls lives in this bungallow. 9. This is the order of the O.C. 10. How far is her house from the telegraph office. 11. The servants of the house keep awake the whole night. 12. Do you know the language of this country? 13. The key of that box is in my pocket.

EXERCISE XIV—(B).

1. *Kumār aḥṣar sāhib kṛ hukam hai kīh, sab sipāhī apnē apnē tambū mēñ soēñ.* 2. *Apis mull kī zabān jāntē haiñ?* 3. *Woh sipāhī kitnē bajē wāpīs pahunchēgā.* 4. *Yahāñ dāk-khānā aur tār ghar donoñ haiñ lekin tāboo ek hī hai.* 5. *Woh banglā sirāf sāhib logon kē wāstē hai, sipāhiyon kē wāstē nahīñ.* 6. *Juwānī ke wāstē thori dūr par kuchh jhonprīāñ haiñ, lekin wuh bahut kharāb haiñ.* 7. *Is ghar kā mālīk kaun hai, zarā usē bulānā.* 8. *Chābi, agar tumhārē pās nahīñ, to aur kiskē pās hai?* 9. *Bādshāh salāmat kṛ hukam hai kīh sab log apnā apnā kām karen.*

Ek hī = only one.

Juwān = a military term for "a man."

Bulānā (بلاں) = to call.

Bādshāh salāmat = His Majesty the King.

Apnā apnā kām = their respective duties or work.

LESSON 15.

ADJECTIVES.

45. An Adjective is a word which qualifies a noun or pronoun.
e. g., Good man, bad horse, etc.

46. As in English, Adjectives in Hindustani precede the noun qualified and agree with it in Number, Gender and Case.

47. Adjectives not ending in (A) never change, those ending in "A" change "A" into "ī" before all feminine nouns immaterial of number and case, and into "ī" before all masculine nouns except when in the nominative singular, when they remain unchanged.

EXAMPLES.

A good man	=	<i>achhā ādmī</i>	اچھا آدمی
To a good man	=	<i>achhē ādmī ko</i>	اچھے آدمی کو
Good men	=	<i>achhē ādmī</i>	اچھے آدمی
To the good men	=	<i>achhē ādmīon ko</i>	اچھے آدمیوں کو
A good girl	=	<i>achhī larkī</i>	اچھی لڑکی

(d). "Kā" before all feminine nouns

To a good girl	=	<i>achhi larkī ko</i>	اچھی لڑکی کو
Good girls	=	<i>achhi larkīñ</i>	اچھی لڑکیاں
To good girls	=	<i>achhi larkīñ ko</i>	اچھی لڑکیوں کو

(*Vide* agreement of possessives as explained in Rule 48).

48. If an Adjective qualifies two or more nouns of various genders, it agrees with the one nearest to it, *e. g.*

Good men and women = *achhē ādmī aur auratēñ* اچھے آدمی اور عورتیں

Men and women are good = *ādmī aur auratēñ achhi haiñ* آدمی اور عورتیں اچھی ہیں

49. The following Adjectives are exceptions and do not change, *vis :—*

Wise	= <i>dānā</i>	دانا	Alive	= <i>zindāh</i>	زندہ
Angry	= <i>khafā</i>	خفا	Fresh	= <i>tāzāh</i>	تازہ
A little	= <i>zārā</i>	ذرا	More or much	= <i>ziyādāh</i>	زیادہ
Separate	= <i>jūdā</i>	جدا	Fine or nice	= <i>umdah</i>	عبدہ

50. Adjectives are repeated for intensification, but only before plural nouns.

e. g. (Many) big trees = *barē barē darakhṭ* بڑے بڑے درخت

Note.—Never add (on) to an Adjective unless it is used as a noun.

VOCABULARY 15.

Lady	= <i>khātūn</i>	خاتون	Red	= <i>lāl</i>	لال
Sky	= <i>āsmān</i>	آسمان	Blue	= <i>nīlā</i>	نیلا
Leaf	= <i>ṭattā</i>	پتا	Green	= <i>harā</i>	ہرا
Colour	= <i>rang</i>	رنگ	Black	= <i>kālā</i>	کالا
Fruit	{ = <i>phal</i> or <i>mēwa</i>	پھل - میوہ	Difficult	= <i>mushkil</i>	مشکل
Hot			Easy	= <i>āsān</i>	آسان
Cold	= <i>thandā</i>	ٹھنڈا	Dark	= <i>aṇḍhērā</i>	اندھیرا
Small	= <i>chhoṭā</i>	چھوٹا	Strong	= <i>mazbūt</i>	مضبوط
Big, great or large	{ = <i>barā</i>	بڑا	Weak	= <i>kam-zor</i>	کمزور
White			Fat	= <i>moṣā</i>	موتّا
To call (to name)	{ = <i>kahnā</i>	کہنا	Thin	{ = <i>patlā</i> or <i>dublā</i>	پتلا - دبلا
			Dirty		
				= <i>maīlā</i>	میلا

EXERCISE XV.—(A).

1. She is a very wise lady. 2. Give him some hot tea and some cold water. 3. There were many small trees in that big forest. 4. These are dirty clothes, bring some clean ones. 5. What do you call "red" in Hindustani? 6. The sky is blue but the leaves of those trees are green. 7. I don't like a black colour, but* I like white.

* If "but" after a negative means "instead of" translate "but" by "balke" بلکہ, otherwise by "lekin" لیکن or "magar" مگر.

8. Bring some fresh fruit from the market. 9. Is this a difficult or an easy language? 10. The night was dark. 11. These horses are strong and fat. 12. Those dogs and bitches are thin and weak.

EXERCISE XV.—(B).

1. *Chā garm hai yā thandī?* 2. *Chunki is jagāh daryā hai is wāstē yih 'position' bahut mazbūt hogī.* 3. *Hindustānī zabān bahut āsān hai, agar parhnē-wālā kām karē aur parhōnē-wālā hoshyār ho.* 4. *Āj āsmān sāj hai.* 5. *Kal kuchh tārāh phal bāzār se lānā.* 6. *Yahān din mēn bhī andhērā rahtā hai.* 7. *Woh jangāl bahut barā hai aur us mēn bahut sē darakht hai.* 8. *Kal sab khātūnēn apnē apnē gharon mēn thīn.* 9. *Yih ghorā kamzor aur dublā hai, koi dūsrī lāo.*

parhnē-wālā = the student.
parhōnē-wālā = teacher.
andhērā = dark, as well as darkness.

LESSON 16.

ADJECTIVES—(continued).

51. Adjectives do not change in the comparative degree. There is no termination equal to—"er" in English. Thus *achhā* اچھا = good or better, *kharāb* خراب = bad or worse and so on. The postposition *sē* سے (=from or than) stands as a sign of the comparative degree, and is placed immediately after the object with which comparison is made.

The position of words in a comparative sentence is as follows :—

Firstly, the object compared, secondly, the object with which comparison is made, thirdly "*sē* سے" followed by the adjective and lastly the verb, e. g.

The horse is better than a cow = *ghorā gāe sē achhā hai* گھوڑا گائے سے اچھا ہے

For special emphasis the words "*ziyādāh* زیادہ or *aur* اور" = "much or more." "*bahut* بہت" = "very," or "*nihāyat* نہایت" = "extremely," may be used before the adjective, though the sense would be quite clear without them.

52. To form the superlative degree prefix "*sab-sē* سب سے" = "than all" to the adjective.

EXAMPLES.

Best = *sab sē achhā* سب سے اچھا (i.e., better than all).

He is the best man = *us sē sab sē achhā ādmī hai* وہ سب سے اچھا آدمی ہے.

The horse is the best of all animals =

ghorā sab jāmwaron sē achhā hai گھوڑا سب جانوروں سے اچھا ہے

"*sē* سے" is used only to translate "than." If there is no "than" in English, there is no "*sē*" in Hindustani. e.g.

My elder brother came = *mō-ā bapū bhāī dyā* میرا بڑا بھائی آیا

53. Add (ہ) to an adjective to form a noun, which will always be feminine, e.g.

Dānāi دانائی = wisdom.

54. The present or past participle of any verb can be used like an adjective and is then followed by "ہوا," e.g.

A written book = *likhī-hūi-katāb* لکھی ہوئی کتاب

A dying man = *martā hūā ādmī* مرتا ہوا آدمی

55. "Sā سا" added to an adjective of quantity or size means "very" (e.g., very long = *lambā sā* لمبا سا). With other adjectives it gives a diminutive sense, means "somewhat" and equals to the English suffix—"ish" e.g., Blackish = *kālā sā* کالا سا.

56. Add "kā ک" to a noun to use it like an adjective, e.g. A gold watch = *sonē kī ghari* سونے کی گھڑی (*sonā* سونا = gold).

VOCABULARY 16.

To spoil	= <i>kharāb-karnā</i>	خراب کرنا	Young	= <i>javān</i> or	
Ignorant	= <i>nādān</i>	نادان		<i>chhoṭā</i>	جوان، چھوٹا
Silver	= <i>chāndī</i>	چاندی	Poor	= <i>gharīb</i> .	غریب
Watch	= <i>gharī</i>	گھڑی	Rich	= <i>amīr</i>	امیر
Bank or edge.	} = <i>kinārā</i>	کنارا	High	= <i>ūchā</i>	اُچھا
Donkey			Low	= <i>nīchā</i>	نیچھا
Mango	= <i>ām</i>	آم	Long	= <i>lambā</i>	لمبا
Year	= <i>sāl</i> or <i>baras</i>	سال-برس	Broad	= <i>chaupā</i>	چوڑا
Although	= <i>agarchi</i>	اگرچہ	Sweet	= <i>miṭhā</i>	میٹھا
Real	= <i>asli</i>	اصلی	Clever	= <i>hoṣhyār</i>	ہوشیار
In fact	} = <i>asal-mēn</i>	اصل میں	Dear	= <i>mahangā</i>	مہنگا
really			Even	= <i>bhī</i>	بھی
Old (in use)	= <i>parānā</i>	پرانا	Enough	} = <i>kāfi</i>	کافی
Old (in age)	= <i>budḍhā</i>	بڑھا	or sufficient.		

IDIOM.

The back door = *pichhē kī darwāzāh* پیچھے کا دروازہ

EXERCISE XVI—(A).

1. This is the oldest shop in this station. 2. The poor man's son is more clever than the rich man's. 3. My house is higher than yours, but lower than this bungalow. 4. The younger boy of my friend is two years older than that girl. 5. This cloth is long enough for me, though it is not sufficiently broad. 6. The mangoes are sweeter than that fruit. 7. The horses are better than the donkeys. 8. He is no better to-day, in-fact he is even worse than yesterday.

9. Ignorance spoils a man. 10. The river bank is not far from here.
11. My silver watch is dearer than his real gold one. 12. Please
shut the front door.

EXERCISE XVI—(B).

1. *Is sāl ūm pahlē sab sālon sē ziyādāh aur eastē haiṅ.* 2. *Yih kamrā khāsā lambā hai, lēkin āpkā is sē bhī ziyādāh hai.* 3. *Hamārī [gharī āpkī gharī sē ziyādāh mazbūt aur mahangī hai.* 4. *Dānās lē bātēn sab ko pasand haiṅ.* 5. *Agarchi māṅ āpko nahīṅ jāntā thā, lēkin āpkā nām mujhe pahlē hī mātām thā.* 6. *Mujhe khiyāl hai kiḥ daryā kī kinārā bahut hī ūchā hogā.* 7. *In jāwānon ko hukam dijiyē kiḥ larū par jāē.* 8. *Purānī kitābeṅ nayī kitābon sē qīmat mēṅ kam haiṅ.* 9. *Woh buddhā ādmī is ghar kī sab sē purānā naukar hai.*

Khāsā lambā (خاصا لبا) = fairly long, sufficiently long.

pahlē hī = already.

Bahut hī ūchā = too high, hogā = will be or must be.

Kam (کم) = Less.

LESSON 17.

SUMMARY OF POSSESSIVES AND ADJECTIVES.

57. Possessives agree with the object possessed regardless of the possessor. The possessor precedes the possessed.

Possessive pronouns must be translated by “*apnā* اُپنا” when they refer to the subject of the sentence and appear in the same clause.

Adjectives precede the nouns qualified.

Adjectives not ending in (A) do not change. Those ending in (A) change into (E or I) in agreement with the noun qualified. If an adjective qualifies two or more nouns of various genders, it agrees with the one nearest to it.

Adjectives are repeated to express an idea of plurality.

Present or past participles of verbs declined with “*hū* ہُو” are employed as adjectives.

Add (s) to an adjective to form a noun.

To convert a noun into an adjective, use “*kā* کا” after the noun.

“*Sā* سا” added to adjectives of “quantity or size” means “very” “*ed*” with other adjectives=“—ish.”

Adjectives do not change in the comparative degree.

“Than” is translated by “*sē* سَ.”

To form the superlative degree, prefix “*sab-sē* سب-سَ” to the adjective.

VOCABULARY 17.

Moon	= <i>chānd</i>	چاند	Fifth	= <i>pāñchwān</i>	پانچواں
Face or mouth	= <i>munh</i>	منہ	Sixth	= <i>chhatā</i>	چھٹا
Family	= <i>kunbah</i>	کنبہ	Seventh	= <i>sātwan†</i>	ساتواں
Handsome	{ = <i>khūb-sūrat*</i>	خوب صورت	Seventy-one	= <i>ik-hattar</i>	ایکتر
Ugly	= <i>bad-sūrat*</i>	بد صورت	Seventy-two	= <i>ba-hattar</i>	بہتر
Cheap	= <i>sastā</i>	سستا	Seventy-three	= <i>ti-hattar</i>	تہتر
Swift, sharp or fast	{ = <i>tēz</i>	تیز	Seventy-four	= <i>chu-hattar</i>	چوہتر
Less	= <i>kam</i>	کم	Seventy-five	= <i>pach-hattar</i>	پچہتر
First	= <i>pahlā</i>	پہلا	Seventy-six	= <i>chhi hattar</i>	چھہتر
Second	= <i>dūsrā</i>	دوسرا	Seventy-seven	= <i>sat-hattar</i>	ستہتر
Third	= <i>tisrā</i>	تیسرا	Seventy-eight	= <i>aṣṭ-hattar</i>	اٹہتر
Fourth	= <i>chauthā</i>	چوتھا	Seventy-nine	= <i>un-āsī</i>	آناسی
			Eighty	= <i>asī</i>	اسی

EXERCISE XVII.—(A).

1. This man is senior to (older than) that. 2. The girls are more good looking than the ugly boys. 3. This is the best book that I know. 4. She is not angry with me. 5. The books are cheap, but the pens are dear. 6. Our old servant is the father of that young boy. 7. Our horses are swifter than your mares. 8. Boys! you are the biggest fools. 9. I like less sugar than that. 10. He was my elder brother, but this was the younger. 11. What a moon like face it is? 12. That boy's brother is the oldest servant in the family,

EXERCISE XVII.—(B).

1. *Aj sātwan dīn hai kīh woh yahān sē chalā gayā.* 2. *Woh khūb-sūrat jagah kiskī hai?* 3. *Ham is puhār par pāñchwān dafā āyē haiñ.* 4. *Uskā ghorā bahut tēz hai lekīn āp kē ghorē kē barābar ūñchā nahīñ.* 5. *Yih miz bahut hī chhoṭī hai, gākar dūsrī lāo.* 6. *Hamārā ghorā is chhāmī mēñ sab sē achhā hai.* 7. *Yih talab to bahut hī thoṭī hai, main is sē ziyādah māngtā hūñ.* 8. *Main achhē sē achhā naukar māngtā hūñ.* 9. *Kam sē kam das ādmā hongē.* 10. *Ziyādah se ziyādah pachās.*

talab (f. طلب) = pay. *kam-sē-kam* = at least.
achhē-sē-achhā = best. *ziyādah-se-ziyādah* = at most.

* *khūb* خوب = good, *sūrat* صورت = appearance.

bad (Pers.) = bad, *sūrat* صورت = appearance.

† The rest of the ordinals are formed by adding "wān" to the cardinals. The termination "wān" changes into "wēñ and wīñ."

e. g., The seventh girl = *sātwan larkī* ساتوین لڑکی

To the seventh man = *sātwan ādmī ko* ساتوین آدمی کو

† "sā" सा is added to nouns to denote "similarity."

LESSON 18.

TRANSITIVE VERBS.

58. There are two kinds of verbs. Transitive and Intransitive.

59. When the action expressed by the verb affects something beyond the doer, the verb is transitive.

e.g. Birds build nests.

(= *parindē ghonālē banātē hain* پرندے گھونسلے بنا لے ہیں)

60. When the action expressed by the verb does not affect anything beyond the doer, but ends there, the verb is intransitive.

e.g. the birds fly

(= *parindē urtē hain* پرندے اُڑ لے ہیں)

In other words, transitive verbs have an object (expressed or understood), but intransitive verbs have no object.

61. The simplest way to find out the object and whether a verb is transitive or intransitive, is, by putting the question "what" after the verb. If there is an answer to "what" the verb is transitive, and the reply is the object. In "Birds build nests," build what? Nests, (therefore the word "nests," is the object of the verb). But in the sentence "the birds fly," fly what? As no reply could be given to the question, the verb is intransitive.

62. When the object of a transitive verb is animate or emphasised, the postposition "*ko* کر" must be added to the object, e.g.

Beat the man = *ādmī ko māro* آدمی کو مارو

"*ko* کر" in this case does not mean "to," it is to particularise and distinctly mark the object.

63. In Hindustani a transitive verb only differs from an intransitive verb in its past tenses.

64. (a). A transitive verb, if used in the past (I saw), perfect (I have seen), pluperfect (I had seen) and past Dubious (I must have seen) tenses, always takes "*ne* نے" after the subject, e.g.

A man wrote a letter = *ādmī-ne* آدمی نے

(b). The verb then agrees with the object in number, gender and case, e.g.

A man wrote a letter = *ādmī-ne chitṭhī likhī* آدمی نے چٹھی لکھی

(c). But, if the object, (in addition to *ne* نے) is followed by "*ko* کر," the verb neither agrees with the subject nor the object, but is placed in the 3rd person masculine singular, e.g.

A man wrote the letter = *ādmī-ne chitṭhī ko likhā* آدمی نے چٹھی کو لکھا

* "*Ne* نے" is considered a postposition, thus the noun followed by "*ne*" is placed in the oblique form (vide lesson 8).

VOCABULARY 18.

To sell	= <i>bēchnā</i>	بیچنا	Bedding	= <i>bistar</i>	بستر
To buy	= <i>kharidnā</i>	خریدنا	A word	= <i>lafz</i>	لفظ
To throw	= <i>phēṅknā</i>	پھینکا	Sun	= <i>dhūṣ (f)</i>	دھوپ
To send away	= <i>bhēṣ-dēnā</i>	بھبھدینا	Month	= <i>mahinā</i>	مہینہ
To send for (persons)	} = <i>bulwānā</i>	بلوانا	Washerman	= <i>dhobi</i>	دھوبی
To send for (things)			Conversation	= <i>bāt chit</i>	بات چیت
	} = <i>mangwānā</i>	منگوانا	Thief	= <i>chor</i>	چور
			New	= <i>nuyā</i>	نیا
To call	= <i>bulānā</i>	بلانا	Otherwise	= <i>nahin to or</i>	نہیں تو ورنہ
To wash	= <i>dhonā</i>	دھونا			
To spread (clothes)	} = <i>bichhānā</i>	بچھانا	In this way	= <i>is tarah</i>	اس طرح
To spread			Eighty-one	= <i>ikāśi</i>	اکاسی
To beat or	} = <i>phailānā</i>	پھیلانا	Eighty-two	= <i>bayāśi</i>	بیساسی
To strike			Eighty-three	= <i>tirāśi</i>	تیراسی
To complete	= <i>pūrā-karnā</i>	پورا کرنا	Eighty-four	= <i>chaurāśi</i>	چوراسی
To keep a promise	} = <i>w'adā-pūrā-</i> <i>karnā</i>	وعدہ پورا کرنا	Eighty-five	= <i>pachāśi</i>	پچاسی
Promise			Eighty-six	= <i>chhiyāśi</i>	چھیاسی
Rupee or money	} = <i>w'adā</i>	وعدہ	Eighty-seven	= <i>saṭāśi</i>	ساتھاسی
			Eighty-eight	= <i>aṭhāśi</i>	اٹھاسی
	} = <i>rūpayā</i>	روپیہ	Eighty-nine	= <i>no-āśi</i>	نواسی
			Ninety	= <i>nanwē</i>	نویسے

EXERCISE XVIII—(A).

1. A mother called her child and gave him two rupees. 2. Why did you beat your servants in this way? 3. My servants have spread my bedding in the sun. 4. He made this box in two months.* 5. The washerman did not wash our clothes well, therefore we sent him away. 6. You did not sent for me, otherwise I would (or should) have come at once. 7. She heard the whole conversation that† passed between me and you. 8. We talked to him for (up to) two hours but he did not listen a word. 9. He caught the thief. 10. The boys threw stones at him. 11. He did awake me early this morning, but I did not get up. 12. The ladies bought a new watch and sold the old one. 13. He did not keep his word (promise).

EXERCISE XVIII—(B).

1. *Ham nē, do mahinē hūē, pachāś jawānoṅ ko larāi par bhēṣ diyā.*
2. *Apnē w'adā kiyā thā kih pachāś rūpayē mahinā talab dōngē.*

*Nouns indicating "Time, Distance or Measurement" are better to be placed in the oblique case singular (instead of the oblique plural). Therefore use "*mahinē* مہینے" and not "*mahinoṅ* مہینوں".

* "that" here = which = *jō* جو.

3. *Dhūp itnī sakht thi ish hamārē bis jāwān bimār hogayē.* 4. *Subēdār Sāhib ko bulwāo.* 5. *Ek gāyī fauran idhar mangwāo.* 6. *Ham nē nayē ghorē kharidē hai.* 7. *Dhobi kaprē uchhē nahin dhotā.* 8. *Kal aasī ādmī lām sē zakhmī āyē.* 9. *Tum nē mērā bistār āj dhūp men kyā nahin phailāyā ?* 10. *Ham us jāwān ko bahut rupayā dēngē jo chor ko pakar lāgā.* -

Sakht (سخت) = severe, hard, stern, very.

Bimār (بیمار) = sick, *lām* (f. لām) = active service.

Zakhmī (زخمی) = wounded.

LESSON 19.

TRANSITIVE VERBS.—(continued).

65. The 1st and the 2nd personal pronouns singular and plural do not change before “*nē* ے,” e. g.,

By me	= <i>main nē</i>	میں نے	By us	= <i>ham-nē</i>	ہم نے
By thee	= <i>tū-nē</i>	تو نے	By you	{ = <i>tum-nē</i> or <i>āp-nē</i>	{ تم نے آپ نے

But the 3rd person “*woh* وہ” changes into “*us* اُس” for the singular and into “*unhon* انہوں” for the plural, e. g.,

They wrote a letter = *unhon-nē chūfthi likhi* انہوں نے چٹھی لکھی

66. The following transitive verbs are exceptions and do not require “*nē* ے,” thus, they are treated as if they were intransitive verbs, viz.

To speak	= <i>bolnā</i>	بولنا	To fear	= <i>ḍarnā</i>	درونا
To forget	{ <i>bhūlnā</i> or <i>bhūl-jānā</i>	{ بھولنا بھولجانا	To find or	{ = <i>milnū</i>	ملنا
To fight	= <i>laṛnā</i>	لڑنا	To meet		
To bring	= <i>lānā</i>	لانا	To climb	= <i>chāṛhnā</i>	چڑھنا
To understand	= <i>samajhnā</i>	سمجھنا	To reach	= <i>pahunchnā</i>	پہنچنا
			To take away	= <i>lejānā</i>	لےجانا

And all other compound verbs ending in an intransitive verb like “*lājānā* لےجانا.”

67. When an action is done “on purpose” the transitive verb is used, however when the action is “accidental” always use the intransitive, e. g.

I broke the pencil (on purpose) transitive =

main nē pencil tori میں نے پینسل توڑی

I broke the pencil (accidentally) intransitive =

pencil ṭūṭ gayi پینسل ٹوٹ گئی

68. When several nouns are subjects “*nē* ے” is only suffixed to the last, but if the subjects are pronouns “*nē* ے” is suffixed to each.

(7)

VOCABULARY 19.

To tell	{ <i>kahnā</i> or <i>batānā</i> }	کہنا بتانا	To set out	{ <i>rawānā-honā</i> }	روانہ ہونا
To burn (int.)	= <i>jalnā</i>	جلنا	To start	{ (<i>sē</i>) <i>shādī-karnā</i> }	(سے) شادی کرنا
To burn (tr.)	= <i>jalānā</i>	جلانا	To marry	= <i>gardan</i> (f)	گردن
Journey	= <i>safar</i>	سفر	Neck	= <i>do-haftē</i>	دو ہفتے
To travel	{ <i>safar-karnā</i> }	سفر کرنا	Fortnight	= <i>bārish</i>	بارش
News	= <i>khabar</i> (f)	خبر	Rain	= <i>nati jāh</i>	نتیجہ
To inform	{ <i>khabar-dēnā</i> }	خبر دینا	Result	= <i>bandūq</i> (f)	بندوق
To save	= <i>barhīnā</i>	بچانا	Gun	= <i>āt</i>	ذات
To pay	{ <i>dēnā</i> or <i>adā-karnā</i> }	دینا ادا کرنا	Caste	= <i>paighām</i>	پیغام
			Message	= <i>taklif</i> (f)	تکلیف
			Inconvenience		

EXERCISE XIX.—(A)

1. I forgot all (which or whatever) you told me. 2. He fell off his horse and broke his neck. 3. They burnt all the wood in a fortnight. 4. The travellers travelled the whole day, but suffered much inconvenience on account of the rain. 5. They then informed me of the news about my son. 6. We heard the result of the examination. 7. He bought a new gun. 8. He saved his money. 9. How much did they pay for (of) this book? 10. A merchant married a woman of his own caste and set out to a distant city. 11. What did you say to him when he brought my message? 12. I and he talked a good deal yesterday.

EXERCISE XIX.—(B).

1. *B'az sipāhī is mahīnē chhuṭṭī par jāēngē.* 2. *Unhēn wusshkil sē do do haftē kē 'ad chhuṭṭī milēgi.* 3. *Kisī nē kal hamāri gharī churā li.* 4. *Main nē āj subah chābi āp kē naukar ko dī thī.* 5. *Ap nē unsē kyā pūchhā thā?* 6. *Tin roz hūē ek pāgul huṭṭē nē usē kāfā.* 7. *Us gāon mēn āp nē koī suwār dākhā?* 8. *Ap kē naukar ko har jagah talāsh kiyā lēkin woh kahīn bhī nahīn milā.* 9. *Unhōn nē zakhmion ko wahān kyon chhorā?* 10. *Tum nē sab chitṭhion par tickat lagāē haiṅ yā nahīn?*

pāgul (پاگل) = mad. *chhornā* (چھڑنا) = to leave.

sawār (سوار) = a cavalry man.

(churānā (چورنا) = to steal.

LESSON 20.

PASSIVES.

69. Add " jānā جانا " to the past participle of a transitive verb to form the passive voice, e. g. To be written = *likhā jānā* لکھا جانا

Both the past participle and " jānā جانا " change in agreement with the passive subject.

EXAMPLES.

Future tense	—The letter will be written = <i>chiffthi likhī jāgī</i>	چٹھی لکھی جائیگی
Present subjunctive	—The letter may be written = <i>chiffthi likhī jāē</i>	چٹھی لکھی جائے
Present tense	—The letter is being written = <i>chiffthi likhī jāti hai</i>	چٹھی لکھی جاتی ہے
Imperfect tense	—The letter was being written = <i>chiffthi likhī jāti thi</i>	چٹھی لکھی جاتی تھی
Conditional tense	—If the letter was written = <i>agar chiffthi likhī jāti</i>	اگر چٹھی لکھی جاتی
Past tense	—The letter was written = <i>chiffthi likhī gayī</i>	چٹھی لکھی گئی
Perfect tense	—The letter has been written = <i>chiffthi likhī gayī hai</i>	چٹھی لکھی گئی ہے
Pluperfect tense	—The letter had been written = <i>chiffthi likhī gayī thi</i>	چٹھی لکھی گئی تھی
Past dubious tense	—The letter must have been written = <i>chiffthi likhī gayī hogi</i>	چٹھی لکھی گئی ہوگی

70. The passive construction is only employed in Hindustani when the actor of the verb is not mentioned or is not known, e. g.

He was killed by a tiger = } = *shēr nē usko mār dālā* شیر نے اُسکو مار ڈالا
A tiger killed him

VOCABULARY.

To catch	} <i>pakarnā</i>	پکڑنا	Ninety-four	= <i>churānawē</i>	چورانوے
To seize			Ninety-five	= <i>pachānawē</i>	پچھانوے
A few	= <i>chand</i>	چند	Ninety-six	= <i>chhiānawē</i>	چھیانوے
To ask	= <i>pūchhnā</i>	پوچھنا	Ninety-seven	= <i>satānawē</i>	ساتانوے
Furlough	= <i>chhutti</i>	چھٹی	Ninety-eight	= <i>aṣṭānawē</i>	اٹھانوے
To lose	= <i>khonā</i>	کھونا	Ninety-nine	= <i>ninānawē</i>	ننانوے
To be lost	= <i>khoyā-jānā</i>	کھو جانا	Hundred	= <i>sau</i>	س
To build	= <i>banānā</i>	بنانا	Thousand	= <i>hazār</i>	ہزار
Difficulty	= <i>mushkil (f)</i>	مشکل	Ten thousand	= <i>das hazār</i>	دس ہزار
Ninety-one	= <i>ikānawē</i>	اکانوے	Hundred thousand	= <i>lākh</i>	لاکھ
Ninety-two	= <i>bānawē</i>	بانوے	Million	= <i>das lākh</i>	دس لاکھ
Ninety-three	= <i>tirānawē</i>	تیرانوے			

EXERCISE XX—(A).

1. The soldiers who were sick were left there.
2. The clothes were stolen yesterday.
3. The thief will be caught in a few days.
4. The news was sent to the cantonments.
5. He was asked the name of the person, but he did not reply.
6. Furlough was taken with great difficulty.
7. He was shut up in a room.
8. I have lost the key.
9. What have you lost?
10. This bungalow was built for the travellers.
11. Do as you are told.
12. The dinner was brought at 8 P. M.

EXERCISE XX—(B).

1. *Chifṭhī likhī gayī aur nāyak ko dī gayī.*
2. *Jah woh lām par gayī, to uskā tamām asbāb bēchā gayā.*
3. *Hāzri āṭh bajē lūgī gayī aur phir rāt ko khānā diyā gayā.*
4. *Jah woh larāī mēn mīrā gayā to uskā bēṭā fauj kī afsar hū.*
5. *Yih khabar fauran palṭan mēn pahunch gayī.*
6. *Tum ko kitnī dafā kahā gayā kī rāt ko bahār jānā thik nahīn.*
7. *Dushman daryā kē pās dēkhē gayē.*

Nāyak (نایک) = Corporal.

Asbāb (اسباب) = Furniture.

Fauj (f. فرج) = Army.

Palṭan (f. پلٹن) = Regiment.

Dushman (دشمن) = Enemy.

LESSON 21.

SUMMARY OF THE TRANSITIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

Table showing the Conjugation of

The transitive verb *likhnā* to write.

Tenses.	Singular.			Plural.		
	1st person.	2nd person.	3rd person.	1st person.	2nd person.	3rd person.
Imperative	.....	<i>likh</i>	.....	.....	<i>likho or likhiyē</i>	.....
Future ...	<i>maiṇ līkhāngā</i>	<i>tū līkhagā</i>	<i>woh līkhagā</i>	<i>ham līkhāngē</i>	<i>tum līkhogē</i>	<i>woh līkhāngē</i>
Subjunctive	<i>maiṇ līkhēṇ</i>	<i>tū līkhē</i>	<i>woh līkhē</i>	<i>ham līkhēṇ</i>	<i>tum līkhē</i>	<i>woh līkhēṇ</i>
Present ...	<i>maiṇ līkhīkhā haṇ</i>	<i>tū līkhīkhā haṇ</i>	<i>woh līkhīkhā haṇ</i>	<i>ham līkhīkhā haṇ</i>	<i>tum līkhīkhā ho</i>	<i>woh līkhīkhā haṇ</i>
Imperfect	<i>maiṇ līkhīkhā thā</i>	<i>tū līkhīkhā thā</i>	<i>woh līkhīkhā thā</i>	<i>ham līkhīkhā thā</i>	<i>tum līkhīkhā thā</i>	<i>woh līkhīkhā thā</i>
Conditional	<i>agar maiṇ līkhīkhā</i>	<i>agar tū līkhīkhā</i>	<i>agar woh līkhīkhā</i>	<i>agar ham līkhīkhā</i>	<i>agar tum līkhīkhā</i>	<i>agar woh līkhīkhā</i>
Past ...	<i>maiṇ-nē līkhā</i>	<i>tū-nē līkhā</i>	<i>us-nē līkhā</i>	<i>ham-nē līkhā</i>	<i>tu-m-nē līkhā</i>	<i>us-hon-nē līkhā</i>
Perfect ...	<i>maiṇ-nē līkhā haṇ</i>	<i>tū-nē līkhā haṇ</i>	<i>us-nē līkhā haṇ</i>	<i>ham-nē līkhā haṇ</i>	<i>tum-nē līkhā haṇ</i>	<i>us-hon-nē līkhā haṇ</i>
Pluperfect	<i>maiṇ-nē līkhā thā</i>	<i>tū-nē līkhā thā</i>	<i>us-nē līkhā thā</i>	<i>ham-nē līkhā thā</i>	<i>tum-nē līkhā thā</i>	<i>us-hon-nē līkhā thā</i>
Past Dubious	<i>maiṇ-nē līkhā hogā</i>	<i>tū-nē līkhā hogā</i>	<i>us-nē līkhā hogā</i>	<i>ham-nē līkhā hogā</i>	<i>tum-nē līkhā hogā</i>	<i>us-hon-nē līkhā hogā</i>

Three tenses formed from the root

Three tenses formed from the present participle.

Four tenses formed from the past participle.

SUMMARY OF THE TRANSITIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.—(concluded).

Table showing the Conjugation of

The passive verb *kāṭā jānā* كَاتَا جَانَا = to be bitten.

Tenses.	Singular.			Plural.		
	1st person.	2nd person.	3rd person.	1st person.	2nd person.	3rd person.
Imperative.	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
Future ...	<i>maṇ kāṭā jānīgā</i> man kāṭa jāniḡ	<i>tū kāṭā jānīgā</i> tu kāṭa jāniḡ	<i>woh kāṭā jānīgā</i> woh kāṭa jāniḡ	<i>ham kāṭē jānīgē</i> ham kāṭe jāniḡ	<i>tum kāṭē jānīgē</i> tum kāṭe jāniḡ	<i>woh kāṭē jānīgē</i> woh kāṭe jāniḡ
Subjunctive	<i>maṇ kāṭā jān</i> man kāṭa jān	<i>tū kāṭā jān</i> tu kāṭa jān	<i>woh kāṭā jān</i> woh kāṭa jān	<i>ham kāṭē jān</i> ham kāṭe jān	<i>tum kāṭē jān</i> tum kāṭe jān	<i>woh kāṭē jān</i> woh kāṭe jān
Present ...	<i>maṇ kāṭā jāṭā</i> man kāṭa jāṭa	<i>tū kāṭā jāṭā</i> tu kāṭa jāṭa	<i>woh kāṭā jāṭā</i> woh kāṭa jāṭa	<i>ham kāṭē jāṭē haṇ</i> ham kāṭe jāṭe haṇ	<i>tum kāṭē jāṭē ho</i> tum kāṭe jāṭe ho	<i>woh kāṭē jāṭē haṇ</i> woh kāṭe jāṭe haṇ
Imperfect...	<i>maṇ kāṭā jāṭā</i> man kāṭa jāṭa	<i>tū kāṭā jāṭā thā</i> tu kāṭa jāṭa thā	<i>woh kāṭā jāṭā thā</i> woh kāṭa jāṭa thā	<i>ham kāṭē jāṭē thē</i> ham kāṭe jāṭe thē	<i>tum kāṭē jāṭē thē</i> tum kāṭe jāṭe thē	<i>woh kāṭē jāṭē thē</i> woh kāṭe jāṭe thē
Conditional	<i>agar maṇ kāṭā jāṭā</i> agar man kāṭa jāṭa	<i>agar tū kāṭā jāṭā</i> agar tu kāṭa jāṭa	<i>agar woh kāṭā jāṭā</i> agar woh kāṭa jāṭa	<i>agar ham kāṭē jāṭē</i> agar ham kāṭe jāṭe	<i>agar tum kāṭē jāṭē</i> agar tum kāṭe jāṭe	<i>agar woh kāṭē jāṭē</i> agar woh kāṭe jāṭe
Past ...	<i>maṇ kāṭā gayā</i> man kāṭa gayā	<i>tū kāṭā gayā</i> tu kāṭa gayā	<i>woh kāṭā gayā</i> woh kāṭa gayā	<i>ham kāṭē gayē</i> ham kāṭe gaye	<i>tum kāṭē gayē</i> tum kāṭe gaye	<i>woh kāṭē gayē</i> woh kāṭe gaye
Perfect	<i>maṇ kāṭā gayā</i> man kāṭa gayā	<i>tū kāṭā gayā hai</i> tu kāṭa gayā hai	<i>woh kāṭā gayā hai</i> woh kāṭa gayā hai	<i>ham kāṭē gayē haṇ</i> ham kāṭe gaye haṇ	<i>tum kāṭē gayē ho</i> tum kāṭe gaye ho	<i>woh kāṭē gayē haṇ</i> woh kāṭe gaye haṇ
Pluperfect	<i>maṇ kāṭā gayā thā</i> man kāṭa gayā thā	<i>tū kāṭā gayā thā</i> tu kāṭa gayā thā	<i>woh kāṭā gayā thā</i> woh kāṭa gayā thā	<i>ham kāṭē gayē thē</i> ham kāṭe gaye thē	<i>tum kāṭē gayē thē</i> tum kāṭe gaye thē	<i>woh kāṭē gayē thē</i> woh kāṭe gaye thē
Past Dubious	<i>maṇ kāṭā gayā</i> man kāṭa gayā	<i>tū kāṭā gayā</i> tu kāṭa gayā	<i>woh kāṭā gayā</i> woh kāṭa gayā	<i>ham kāṭē gayē</i> ham kāṭe gaye	<i>tum kāṭē gayē</i> tum kāṭe gaye	<i>woh kāṭē gayē</i> woh kāṭe gaye
		<i>hoga</i>	<i>hoga</i>	<i>hoge</i>	<i>hoge</i>	<i>hoge</i>

Three tenses formed from the root.

Three tenses formed from the present participle.

Four tenses formed from the past participle.

PART II.

LESSON 1.

IRREGULAR USE OF CERTAIN PARTICIPLES.

1. The following verbs are used in their past participles to indicate "present action," but in their present participles to indicate "habitual action," viz.

To sit down	=	bāṣhṇā	بیٹھا
To stand up	=	kharā-honā	کھڑا ہوا
To lie down (animate)	=	lēṇā	لیٹنا
To lie down (animate and inanimate)	=	paṇnā	پڑنا
To grow (vegetation)	=	ugnā	اُگنا

2. The following verbs are used in their inflected past participles when translating present participles in English, viz.

Wearing	=	pahīnē (hūē)	پہنے (ہوئے)
Holding	=	pakrē (hūē)	پکڑے (ہوئے)
Taking or carrying*	=	līē (hūē)	لے (ہوئے)

3. The verbs *dēkhnā* دیکھنا = to see, and *sunnā* سنا = to hear, are always used with the inflected present participle of another verb (those given in R. 1 and 2 are used in their past participles instead) e. g.

To see going	=	jātē dēkhnā	جائے دیکھنا
I heard him speaking	=	main nē usē boltē sunā	میں نے اُسے بولتے سنا

VOCABULARY 1.

Plant	=	paudā	پودا	To sing	=	gānā	گانا
Hat	=	ṭopī	ٹوپی	To aim at	{	nishānā-bāndhnā	نشانہ باندھنا
Syce	=	sāis	سائیس	English	=	angrēzī	انگریزی
Boot	=	jūtī	جوتی	Head	=	sir	سر
A leopard	=	chitā	حیثا	Basket	=	ṭokrā	ٹوکرا
A bear	=	bhālū	بھالو	To turn	=	ghūmnā	گھومنا
Always	=	hamēshā	ہمیشہ	Socks	=	jurrābēn	جراپین
Hand	=	hāth	ہاتھ	Coat	=	kurṭī	کرتی
Right	=	dāyān	دایاں				
Left	=	bāyān	بایاں				

IDIOM.

To the left	=	bā-ēn hāth ko	بائیں ہاتھ کو
To the right	=	dā-ēn hāth ko	دائیں ہاتھ کو

* When "with" in English can be substituted by carrying or holding, translate "with" by *līē* (hūē) (لے ہوئے), e. g.

He came with a stick = woh ek lakṛī līē hūē āyā (وہ ایک لکڑی لے کر آیا)

EXERCISE I.—(A).

1. Many small plants and trees grow in my garden. 2. The servant always sits here, but to-day he was standing near the stables. 3. I held my hat in my right hand. 4. He had a dog with him. 5. He came with a stick in his hand. 6. A leopard saw me aim at him. 7. Seeing a bear coming he fled. 8. I hear him singing every day. 9. A syce is standing holding the horse. 10. He was wearing long boots. 11. Turn to the left and not to the right.

EXERCISE I.—(B).

1. *Kal rāt ham nē usē bāzār jātē dēkhā.* 2. *Tum nē usē kabhī angrēzī boltē sunā?* 3. *Sāis ghorā pakṛē kharā hai.* 4. *Mān bachchē ko liyē baiṣhī hai.* 5. *Woh sir par ṭolerā liyē jātā hai.* 6. *Dushman lāl kurtī pahīnē hūē thē.*

۱ پہلے دالین ہاتھ کو کھمو اور پھر بالین کو ۲ چیتا ایک بکری کو منہ
میں لئے جاتا تھا ۳ میں ہمیشہ اُس کو بیٹھے ہوئے دیکھتا ہوں ۴ ہم جرائین
کبھی نہیں پہنتے ۵ تم یہاں بیٹھے کیا کرتے ہو ۶ میں تو ایسے ہی بیٹھا ہوں

LESSON 2.**The use of Ap آپ.**

4. *AP† آ* = "one's self" and can be substituted by "*khud* خود"
e.g. He came himself = *woh āp āyā* وہ آپ آیا or *woh khud āyā* وہ خود آیا.
We shall go ourselves = *ham āp jāēngē* ہم آپ جانیں گے or
ham khud jāēngē ہم خود جانیں گے.

The possessive of "*AP آ*" is *apnā اپنا* (Vide Rule 44, Lesson 14, Part I).

e.g. I am reading my book = *maiṃ apnī kitāb parhātā hūn*

میں اپنی کتاب پڑھتا ہوں

This is my own book = *yih mērī apnī kitāb hai* یہ میری اپنی کتاب ہے

One's self as an object is translated by *apnē-āp-kō* اپنے آپ کو

e.g. He hid himself = *usnē apnē āp ko chhipāyā* اس نے اپنے آپ کو چھپایا

5. "*Ap آپ*" is used to show "respect" in place of "*tum*" and requires the verb in the 3rd person plural (Vide foot note to Rule 36, Lesson 10, Part I).

e.g. Will you go there? = *āp udhar jāēngē* آپ ادھر جائیں گے.

The Genitive of "*āp آپ*" "*āp-kā آپ کا*."

e.g. Is this your honor's (or your) horse? = *Kyā yih āpkā ghorā hai*
کیا یہ آپ کا گھوڑا ہے

* = I am doing nothing (note the idiom).

† "*Ap آپ*" if used by itself always means "you, your honor, etc." but, if used with a personal pronoun, it means "one's self."

VOCABULARY 2.

Sunday	= <i>itwār</i>	اتوار	To hide (int.)	= <i>chhipnā</i>	چھپنا
Monday	= <i>pīr</i>	پیر	To hide (tr.)	= <i>chhipānā</i>	چھپانا
Tuesday	= <i>mangal</i>	منگل	To teach	= <i>parhānā</i>	پڑھانا
Wednesday	= <i>budh</i>	بدھ	To wait	} <i>hāzīr-honā</i>	حاضر ہونا
Thursday	= <i>jum'arāt</i>	جمعرات	upon		
Friday	= <i>jum'ah</i>	جمعہ	Present 'adj.]	= <i>hāzīr</i>	حاضر
Saturday	= <i>sanīchar</i>	سنیچر	Future or in	} <i>āya, dā</i>	آیندہ
Holiday	{ <i>chhuffī</i> <i>kā dīn</i>	چھٹی کا دن	future		
Month	= <i>mahinā</i>	مہینہ	Half anna	} <i>ādī ānē-ka-ticket</i>	آدھ آنے کا ٹکٹ
Tailor	= <i>darzī</i>	درزی	stamp		
Envelope	= <i>lifāfah</i>	لغافہ	To stick	} (ticket) <i>lagānā</i>	(ٹکٹ) لگانا
Address	= <i>patā</i>	پتہ	(stamps, etc.)		
To post 'a letter)	} <i>chiffī-dāl'nā</i>	چٹھی ڈالنا	Next	= <i>aglā</i>	اگلا
			Last	= <i>pichhlā</i>	پچھلا

IDIOMS.

On Monday	= <i>pīr ko or pīr kē roz</i>	پیر کو یا پیر کے روز
Next Monday	= <i>aglā pīr-ko</i>	اگلے پیر کو
Last Monday	= <i>pichhlē pīr-ko</i>	پچھلے پیر کو
Monday week	= <i>haftē bad pīr ko</i>	ہفتے بعد پیر کو
That is to say	= <i>y'anī</i>	یعنی

EXERCISE II—(A).

1. Will you see me personally next Sunday? 2. Sunday is a holiday, so (therefore) I will wait upon you on Monday. 3. If the tailor does not come here himself on Friday, I will not give him any more work in future. 4. I have not seen him since (from) Thursday last. 5. They will bring their dogs here on Wednesday. 6. I will show you the book next week. 7. Will you teach me this month yourself three times a week? i.e., on Tuesdays, Thursdays and Saturdays. 8. I will buy the horse on Monday week, if he likes to sell it. 9. Take this letter and post it yourself in the post office. 10. Stick one half anna stamp on it. 11. I hid myself in the box.

EXERCISE II—(B).

1. *Ap khud itwār ko āēngē yā mangal ko.* 2. *Wuh hamārī apnī kitāb hai.* 3. *Is lifāfē par ādh ādh ānē wālē do ticket lagānā aur phir apne hāth sē dāk khānē mēñ dāl'nā.* 4. *Āyāndā tum apnā kām pāñch bajē sē pah'lē karnā.* 5. *Budh kē roz chhuffī hai, is liyē ham daftar nah āēngē.* 6. *Apkā patā Lahore mēñ kyā hai.*

۱ جناب (a) کا نام کیا ہے ۲ آپ کا صاحب زادہ (b) صبح کی وقت سیاحان
آتا ہے ۳ اس بادشاہ زادے (b) کا نام کیا تھا ۴ وہ خود سیاحی زادہ (b)
ہے ۵ ہم اوس کا پتہ بھول گئے ۶ اگلے پیر کے روز ہم اوسکو دیکھنے جا لینگے

LESSON 3.

THE INFINITIVE USED AS A NOUN.

6. The infinitive is the only form of the verb used as a noun, either as an object or a subject. It is always masculine and changes its last (A) into (E) before postpositions, e. g.

His writing is very good = *uskā likhnā bahut achhā hai* اسکا لکھنا بہت اچھا ہے

He came here to write a letter = *woh ek chitthī likhnē kō wāstē āyā*

وہ ایک چٹھی لکھنے کے واسطے آیا

Note.—When “to” with the infinitive means “in order to,” change the infinitive termination (nā) into (nē) and add “ko” (کے), (*kē*) *wāstē* (واسطے) or (*ke*) *liye* (لئے) as in the above example.

7. Infinitives are also used as imperatives (vide Rule 6 Lesson 1, Part I), e. g. write this letter = *yih chitthī likhnā* یہ چٹھی لکھا

(This construction is also used for the present imperative to denote “politeness”.)

8. To wish = *chāhnā* چاہنا

When translating the desiderative “to wish,” prefix the infinitive of the required verb to “chāhnā”, e. g.

To wish to speak = *bolnā chāhnā* بولنا چاہنا

She wishes to come = *woh ānā chāhtī hai* وہ آنا چاہتی ہے

(The infinitive never changes).

VOCABULARY 3.

Journey, or Travelling	} <i>saḡar</i> سفر	Help, or Assistance	<i>madad</i> (f) مدد
To travel	= <i>saḡar karnā</i> * سفر کرنا		<i>madad dēnā</i> , or
Effort, attempt	= <i>koshish</i> کوشش	To help	<i>madad karnā</i> * مدد کرنا
To try	= <i>koshish karnā</i> * کوشش کرنا		

(a). “Janāb” جناب is a term of respect (like *āp* آپ) but can only be used in addressing superiors

(b). “*zādah*” زادہ = “born of,” hence “*sāhib zādah*” صاحب زادہ is a polite expression for “your son or the son of your honor” “*bādhshāh zādah*” بادشاہ زادہ “*siḡpāhī zādah*” سپاہی زادہ = son of a soldier.”

* These and other verbs formed by adding “*karnā*” to a noun require a genitive before them according to the gender of the noun, of which they are compounded (only when connected with another noun or infinitive), e. g. I tried to go there = *main nē wahān jānē kī koshish kī*

میں نے وہاں جانے کی کوشش کی

'To set out or	}	<i>rawānā honā</i>	رو! نہ ہونا
'To start			
Rest, comfort,	}	<i>ārām</i>	آرام
or convenience			
'To rest	=	<i>ārām karnā</i>	آرام کرنا
To be tired	=	<i>thak jānā</i>	تھک جانا
Tired	=	<i>thakā hūā</i>	تھکا ہوا
A quarter*	=	<i>pāo</i>	پاؤ
A half	=	<i>ādḥā</i>	آدھا
Three quarters	=	<i>paunā</i>	پونا
One and three	}	<i>paunē do</i>	پونے دو
quarters			

One and a	}	<i>sawā</i>	سوا
quarter			
Two and a	}	<i>sawā do</i>	سوا دو
quarter			
One and a half	=	<i>dērh</i>	دیرھ
Two and a half	=	<i>dhāi</i>	دھاکی
Three and a	}	<i>sārhē tīn</i>	سارھے تین
half			
Tiffin	=	<i>tiffin</i>	ٹفن
Service	=	<i>naukari</i>	نوکری
To take (time)	= (-)	<i>lagna</i>	لگنا (-)
(It takes "ko" after the subject and itself agrees with the object).			

IDIOMS.

In former days = *pahlē zamānē mēn* پہلے زمانے میں

For a while = *thorī dēr tak* تھوڑی دیر تک

At 10 minutes past 3 = *tīn bajkar das minṭ par* تین بجکر دس منٹ پر

At 10 minutes to 3 = *tīn bajnē mēn das minṭ par* تین بجنے میں دس منٹ پر

At 6-30 A. M. = *sārhē chhi bajē subah ko* ساڑھے چھ بجے صبح کو

At 5-15 P. M. = *sawā pānch bajē shām ko* سوا پانچ بجے شام کو
(*bajnā* = to strike).

EXERCISE III—(A).

1. It was very difficult to travel in former days. 2. It took me an hour to write this letter. 3. We are trying to help the people. 4. I was (became) glad to see you. 5. It is not right to say that. 6. I wish to go there at 6-30 (A.M.). 7. Do you wish to see him at 6-15 or 5-45 this evening? 8. The tiffin is at 1-30 and we want to start at 2-30. 9. He is tired and does not want to wake up before 1-15 P. M. 10. What o'clock is it now? (or what time is it now?) 11. Come here at 10 minutes to 3 to see me, and not at 10 past 3. 12. At what time do you wish to come tomorrow? 13. He sat down to rest a while.

EXERCISE III—(B).

1. *Woh pāo ghanṭē mēn shahar pahunchnā chāhtā hai, lēkin kam sē kam usko ādhā ghanṭā lagēgā.* 2. *Ham itnē thak gayē haiṅ kīh ab ghar sē nikalnā nahīn chāhtē.* 3. *Dhūi ghanṭē kē b'ad ham phir rawāna hāē.* 4. *Paunē do sāl ki naukari kē b'ad woh chuffi par jānā chāhtā thā.* 5. *Ab kitnē bajē haiṅ?* 6. *Chār bajkar bis minṭ (minute) hāē.*

۱ کل ہم آپ کے ہاں * آتھہ بجے سے پانچ منٹ پہلے پہنچ جائینگے ۲ لڑکے یہاں کھیلنے کے لیے آتے ہیں ۳ تم کو دفتر میں زیادہ سے زیادہ چار گھنٹے لگینگے

* (*kā*) *hān* = in the house of, etc.

۴ پہلے زمانے میں لوگ پیدل سفر کرتے سے بہت تکلیف اُٹھاتے تھے ۵ تھوڑی دیر تک وہاں ٹھہرنا ۶ وہ بہت اُتھے ہوئے تھے اور تھوڑی دیر آرام کرنا چاہتے تھے

LESSON 4.

The use of "chāhiyē" چاہئے "parnā" پونا and "honā" ہونا

9. (a). "Must, ought, should or it is necessary" is translated by "chāhiyē" چاہئے

Chāhiyē چاہئے takes "ko" کو after the subject and the accompanying verb in the infinitive.

e. g. He must come = usko ānā chāhiyē اُس کو آنا چاہئے

(b). Chāhiyē thā تھا چاہئے = "should have or ought to have."

e. g. She ought to have come = usko ānā chāhiyē thā اس کو آنا چاہئے تھا

Note.—"Chāhiyē" چاہئے remains unchanged for masculine and feminine, singular or plural, but the infinitive may be changed to agree with the object, e. g.

I must write a letter = mujh ko chūfthi likhnī chāhiyē مجھے کو چٹھی لکھنی چاہئے

I ought to have written a letter =

'mujh ko chūfthi likhnī chāhiyē thi مجھے کو چٹھی لکھنی چاہئے تھی

It also means "want, require or needs, e. g.

I want tea = mujh ko chā chāhiyē مجھے کو چا چاہئے

10. To indicate "force or compulsion" use either "parnā" پونا or "honā" ہونا. "They follow the same rule as "chāhiyē" چاہئے except that the infinitive as well as the verb "parnā" پونا or "honā" ہونا must agree with the object (if any), e. g.

I had to write a letter = mujh ko chūfthi likhnī parī مجھے کو چٹھی لکھنی پڑی

VOCABULARY 4.

To finish	{ khatam-karnā ختم کرنا	To confess	{ iqrār-karnā اقرار کرنا
To sign one's name	{ dast-khat karnā دستخط کرنا	Left, remaining, rest of, reminder	{ bāqi باقی
A march	= kūch کوچ	To climb or To mount	{ charhānā چڑھنا
To march	= kūch-karnā کوچ کرنا		
Confession	= iqrār اقرار		

***Note.**—There are two distinct idiomatic forms used only with the present tense, e. g.

I have to go (now) = mujh ko jānā hai مجھے کو جانا ہے

I (always) have to go = mujh ko jānā partā hai or مجھے کو جانا پڑتا ہے

mujh ko jānā hotā hai مجھے کو جانا ہوتا ہے

But, I had to go = mujh ko jānā thā or parī مجھے کو جانا تھا یا پڑا

I shall have to go = mujh ko jānā hogā or parēgā مجھے کو جانا ہوگا یا پڑےگا

Mountain or hill	} <i>pahār</i>	پہاڑ	Mistake	= <i>ghalatī</i>	غلطی
Hill or hilly	= <i>pahārī</i>	پہاڑی	Wrong or False	} <i>ghalat</i>	غلط
Top	= <i>choṭī</i>	چوٹی	Whenever	= <i>jāh-kalbī</i>	جب کبھی
Now-a-days	= <i>āj-kāl</i>	آجکل	Ripe	= <i>pakkā</i>	پکا
Whether-or	{ <i>khwāh-khwāh</i>	خواہ خواہ	Unripe	= <i>kachchā</i>	کچھا
Station	= <i>astation</i>	اسٹیشن	Truth	= <i>sach</i>	سچ
Honest	= <i>imāndār</i>	ایماندار	Whole truth	} <i>sach-sach</i>	سچ سچ
Industrious	= <i>mihnatī</i>	معنّی	Truly		
Labour or Hardwork	} <i>mihnat</i>	مہنت	True	= <i>sachchā</i>	سچّا
			Lies	= <i>jhūṭh</i>	جھوٹہ
			Liar or false	= <i>jhūṭhā</i>	جھوٹا

IDIOMS.

By hook or by crook	= <i>jūn-tūn karkē</i>	جون نون کرے
Punctually	= <i>thik waqt par</i>	ٹھیک وقت پر

EXERCISE IV.—(A).

1. We need more money if we want to finish this work within a week. 2. You must sign your name on this paper. 3. We have to reach the station at four o'clock. We must start at once, as there is only one hour left. 4. Every one should be honest and industrious. 5. He ought to have confessed his mistake. 6. You will have to do it, whether you like it or not. 7. We must do this by hook or by crook. 8. It is 10-40 and you ought to have been here at quarter past ten. 9. Whenever he comes here I have to go. 10. He has to come in the office punctually at 10 o'clock every day. 11. This fruit is unripe. I want some ripe one. 12. You should tell me the whole truth, and no lies. 13. He had nothing more to say. 14. I have to do a great deal of (much) work now a days.

EXERCISE IV.—(B).

1. *Ap ko yahān sārḥē tin bajē anā chāhīyē thā.* 2. *Ab paunē chār bajē hai—Ap itnī dēr sē kyūn āyē?* 3. *Jūn tūn karkē ham ko is pahār kī choṭī par chāhīnā hogā.* 4. *Chūnki rāstā pahārī aur unchā nīchā hai, iswāstē kūch āhīstā karnā parēgā.* 5. *Tum ko kyā chāhīyē?* 6. *Usko do kitābēn chāhīyē.*

۱ جھوٹہ بولنا نہیں چاہئے ۲ آپ کو اس کاغذ پر ٹکٹ لگا کر دستخط کرنے پڑینگے ۳ جب کبھی صاحب یہاں آئے ہیں تو مجھے شکر جانا پڑتا ہے ۴ تم کو اُدھر جانا ہے ۵ خواہ تم چاہو یا نہ چاہو یہ کام تو کرنا ہوگا ۶ تم کو اُس کا سچ جھوٹہ معلوم کرنا چاہئے

LESSON 5.

11. "*Milnā* (مِلنا) = "to get, obtain, receive, find or to be found."

"*Milnā** (مِلنا) requires "ko کر" with the subject and therefore agrees with the object.

e.g. I got (received) a book = *mujh ko ek kitāb milī* مجھ کو ایک کتاب ملی.

He received ten rupees = *usko das rupayē milē* اُس کو دس روپے ملے.

12. "*Milnā* (مِلنا) also means "to meet, to visit or to see (persons)."

When thus used "*milnā* (مِلنا) agrees with its subject like ordinary verbs, but if the object is followed by *sē* سے "it means meeting "by appointment," if followed by "*ko* کر" "accidental."

e.g., I met a gentleman = *main ek sāhib ko milā* (accidental)

میں ایک صاحب کو ملا.

But, *main ek sāhib se milā* (by appointment) میں ایک صاحب سے ملا.

VOCABULARY 5.

To be satisfied	<i>rāzi-hunā</i> راضی ہونا	Pay	= <i>talab</i> (f)	طلب
To find out	<i>daryāft-karnā</i> دریافت کرنا	Allowance	= <i>bhatta</i>	بھتہ
To ask for	<i>māngnā</i> مانگنا	Facts	= <i>hālāt</i>	حالات
To demand	<i>shūr'us karnā</i> شروع کرنا	Summer or heat	= <i>garmī</i>	گرمی
To Com-mence (tr.)	<i>shūr'us honā</i> شروع ہونا	Winter	= <i>jāṛā</i>	جازا
To Com-mence (int.)	<i>bāriṣh</i> بارش	Season or weather	= <i>mausim</i>	موسم
Rain	<i>bāriṣh barasnā or pāni pārnā</i> بارش برسنا یا پانی پڑنا	Rains	= <i>barsāt</i>	برسات
To rain	<i>hawā</i> (f) ہوا	At last	= <i>ākhir</i>	آخر
Air or wind	<i>hawā-chalnā</i> ہوا چلنا	Although	= <i>agarchi</i>	اگرچہ
To blow	<i>āb-o-hawā</i> (f) آب و ہوا	Kind	= <i>mīharbān</i>	مہربان
Climate		Kindness	= <i>mīharbānī</i>	مہربانی
		Kindly	= <i>mīharbānī-sē</i>	مہربانی سے
		Since†	= <i>jab-sē</i>	جب سے

IDIOM.

It is too hot = *bahut hī garmī hotī hai* بہت ہی گرمی ہوتی ہے

* "*Milnā* (مِلنا) though a transitive verb, does not take "نہ نہ."

It is never used in the imperative or conjunctive participle.

e.g., Get (bring) me a book = *mujh ko ek kitāb lāo* مجھ کو ایک کتاب لاؤ

† "Since" as a conjunction = *jab-sē* جب سے.

"Since" as a postposition = *sē* سے.

EXERCISE V—(A).

1. He was not satisfied, though he received his pay. 2. Turn to the left, you will then find the house. 3. At last he found out the real facts. 4. He asked for 6 months' leave to go to the hills, but he did not get it. 5. The climate of this place is not good. It is too hot in summer, and too cold in winter. 6. I got no rest since I have been here. 7. I shall meet you at the Railway Station at 5 P. M. 8. Kindly get me some newspaper. 9. Go and meet the gentleman in the Stiffle's hotel, you will find him in Room No. 8. 10. The rainy season has commenced, it* now rains in the mornings and blows in the evenings. 11. The weather is bad.

EXERCISE V—(B).

1. *Jārē mēn har shakhs ko subah aur shām chā milte hai.* 2. *Ham tumhārē wāstē kal Colonel Sahib sē milēngē.* 3. *Tum chhuffi māngtē ho, lēkin itni lambi chhuffi nahīn milēgi.* 4. *Woh hamē milnē āyā lehin ham bāhar thē.* 5. *Tum ko kitni talab milte hai?* 6. *Kuchh bhatta bhī miltā hai yā nahīn.*

۱ شہر جا کر اُسکا نام اور پتہ دریافت کرنا ۲ سگیش جاکر صاحب سے ملنا اور میرا سگم دینا ۳ جاتے جاتے اسے چار چور ملے ۴ پھر اس کا کچھ بھی پتہ نہ ملا ۵ مہربانی کر کے کل مجھ سے آٹھ بجے ملنا ۶ ہوسات کے موسم میں پانی بہت برساتا ہے

LESSON 6.**“To have” DENOTING POSSESSION.**

13. “To have” denoting possession has no equivalent in Hindustani. It is translated

(a) by “*ke pās* پاس کے” if the object possessed can be sold or can change hands, e. g.

He has a book = *uske pās kitāb hai* اُس کے پاس کتاب ہے

(b) by the genitive “*kā* کا” if the object is unsaleable, e. g.

He has two eyes = *us kī do āñkhēn haiñ* اُس کی دو آنکھیں ہیں

(c) by “*ko* کو” if the object is an abstract noun, e. g.

He has pain = *us ko dard hai* اُس کو درد ہے

(d) by “*mēn* میں” if the possessor is lifeless, e. g.

This house has two doors = *is ghar mēn do darwāzē haiñ*

اس گھر میں دو دروازے ہیں

*It rains = *pāñī partā hai* پانی پڑتا ہے. “It” is not translated in such like phrases.

VOCABULARY 6.

Rent, hire or fare	} <i>kirāyā</i> کرایہ	Silver	= <i>chāndī</i> چاندی
		Gold	= <i>sonā</i> سونا
To let	{ <i>kirāyā par dēnā</i> کرایہ پر دینا	Relationship	= <i>rishta</i> رشتہ
Wealth	= <i>daulat</i> دولت	Relation or relative	} <i>rishtedār</i> رشتیدار
Sleep	= <i>nīnd</i> (f) نیند	Army	= <i>fauj</i> (f) فوج
Family	{ <i>kunbah</i> or کنبہ <i>khāndān</i> خاندان	Beggar	= <i>faqīr</i> فقیر
Busy	{ <i>kām mēn</i> or کام میں <i>masrūf</i> مصروف	Complaint	= <i>shikāyat</i> شکایت
Cup	= <i>pyālā</i> پیالہ	Cold	= <i>sukām</i> زکام
		Fever	= <i>bulhār</i> بخار

IDIOMS.

Rs. 50 per month	= <i>pachās rupayē māhwār</i> پچاس روپیہ ماہوار
A cup of tea	= <i>ek pyālī chā</i> ایک پیالی چا
I am sorry	= <i>muñh ko afsos hai</i> منہ کو افسوس ہے
For how much	= <i>kītnē ko</i> کتنے کو

EXERCISE VI.—(A).

1. I have no engagement (work) to-day at four. 2. He possessed great wealth. 3. You had no sleep last night and must be tired to-day. 4. He has a large family. 5. I have neither silver nor gold. 6. Tell him 'I am too busy to-day and have no time to see him.' 7. Have you any relation in the army? 8. Have they got any fresh fruit in the market? 9. Have you a book like that? I am sorry I have not. 10. For how much will you let this house? I had one last year for Rs. 60 per month. 11. I am dining out to-night, but will have a cup of tea when I return*. 12. I must have your reply at-once. 13. A certain rich man had a son.

EXERCISE VI.—(B).

1. *Mērē pās paisā kahāñ† jō faqīr ko dēñ.* 2. *Kal to mērē pās itnā bhī waqt nah thā kih us sē milnē jātā.* 3. *Fauj mēn mērē do larhē naukar haiñ.* 4. *Amīr logon kē pās bahut sē ghorē gorāñ hoti haiñ.* 5. *Larhon kē pās āj ek bhī kitāb nahīñ.* 6. *Tum ko rāt kē waqt nīnd nahīñ āti?†*
 ۱ مجھے بہت (افسوس) ہے کہ میرے پاس ایک بھی کتاب نہیں ۲ پچھلے سال تو میرے پاس بہت کام تھا ۳ تم کو کیا شکایت ہے؟ ۴ مجھے دو روز سے زکام اور بخار ہے ۵ اُن لوگوں کے پاس بہت دولت نہیں ۶ آپ کے پاس گھڑی ہے؟

* If the principle clause is in future, the dependant clause also must be in the future.

† Interrogatives denote strong negation.

‡ *Nīnd-ānā* = to get sleep, takes "ko" after the subject.

•• "Sē" = "since or for" in connection with time.

LESSON 7.

“To” and “From.”

When implying “motion.”

14. “To” only when used with verbs of motion (like *ānā* آنا *jānā* جانا *lājānā* لیجانا, etc.) is translated by (کے پاس *kē pās*), when the motion is towards animate objects.

e.g. Go to him = *us kē pās jāo* اُس کے پاس جاؤ

but when speaking about superiors (*kī khidmat mēn* میں کی خدمت میں) is substituted for (*kē pās* کے پاس)

e.g. I went to the Colonel = *mainē Colonel Sahib kī khidmat mēn gayā* میں کرنیل صاحب کی خدمت میں گیا

15. “From” when used with verbs of motion is translated by “*kē pās se* سے کے پاس” but only with reference to animate objects.

e.g. a letter came from my brother

= *mērē bhāi kē pās se ek chūñhi āyī* میرے بھائی کے پاس سے ایک چٹھی آئی

VOCABULARY 7.

Colonel	{ <i>karnail sahib</i> کرنیل صاحب	To lose (tr.)	= <i>khonā</i> کھونا
		To be lost	= <i>khoyā-jānā</i> کھو جانا
Adjutant	{ <i>ajīṭan sahib</i> اجیٹن صاحب	To repair	{ <i>marammat-karnā</i> موسم کرنا
Enemy	= <i>dushman</i> دشمن	Fear	= <i>dar</i> ڈر
Messenger	= <i>qāsid</i> قاصد	To fear or	{ <i>ḍarnā</i> ڈرنا
Shoe-maker	= <i>mochi</i> موچی	To be afraid	
Merchant	= <i>saudāgar</i> سوداگر	To frighten	= <i>darānā</i> ڈرانا
Handkerchief	{ <i>rūmāl</i> رومال	Brave	= <i>bahadur</i> بہادر
Petition (written)	{ <i>'arzi</i> عرض	Absent	= <i>ghair-hāzīr</i> غیر حاضر
Request (verbal)		Silk	= <i>rēsham</i> (f) ریشم
To request or To state respectfully in addressing superiors)	{ <i>'arz</i> (f) عرض	Silk (adj.)	= <i>rēshamī</i> ریشمی
		Letter	= <i>khat</i> خط
	{ <i>arz-karnā</i> عرض کرنا	Leather	= <i>chamṛā</i> چمڑا

IDIOMS.

For long = *dēr-tak* دیر تک

Long ago = *dēr-kā*, or *kabhi kā* دیر کا کہی کا

EXERCISE VII—(A).

1. He will return to us and won't be absent for long. 2. Your letter never reached me, the address must have been wrong. 3. Have you received a letter from the Colonel? 4. Send this book to Mr. Smith at once. 5. Take my boots to the shoemaker to repair. 6. He

brought me the handkerchief, which was lost two years ago. 7. Please take this man to the Adjutant. 8. A messenger has come from the enemy. 9. From where do you bring this? 10. I brought it from the merchant in the city. 11. He requested me to see you. 12. They frightened the children daily.

EXERCISE VII—(B).

1. *Kal ek chitthi sahib bahādur* kē pās sē āyī hai, jis mēn likhā hai ki woh chār roz sē bimār hai.* 2. *Woh daurē daurī mērē pās āyē.* 3. *Unkē pās hai kyā jiske khoye jānē kā dūr ho?* 4. *Mochi kē pās chamrā nahīn āyā, warnā woh jūti kabhi kā banā detā.* 5. *Ajifān sāhib kī khidmat mēn jākar salām bolo.* 6. *Hamārē hāñ ek khat āyā hai.*

۱ سوداگر کے پاس سے ایک ریشمی رومال لاؤ ۲ اس کے پاس کہی
 بیچو ۳ یہ غلط ہے کہ اس نے کوئی عرضی کرنیل صاحب کے پاس بھیجی ہے
 ۴ پرسوں صبح ہی ہمارے پاس آنا ۵ میں اپنا آدمی تمہارے پاس بھیجوں گا
 اسے کیڑے دے دینا ۶ ہمارے دو خط کہو لے گئے ہیں

LESSON 8.

COMPOUND VERBS.

Saknā سکتا = to be able and *chuknā* چکنا = to have done or finished.

16. (a). When translating the potential (to be able or can) only prefix the root of the required verb to (*saknā* سکتا †), e. g.

To be able to speak = *bol saknā* بول سکتا

He won't be able to speak English = *woh angrezī bol nahīn† sakēgā*

وہ انگریزی بول نہیں سکیگا

(b). The above rule also applies when translating the completive (to finish or to have done) by (*chuknā* چکنا †), e. g.

To finish speaking = *bol chuknā* بول چکنا

She has finished writing = *woh likh chuki hai* وہ لکھ چکی ہے

* "Sāhib bahādur" is a more respectful term than "sāhib."

† "Saknā سکتا and chuknā چکنا" are to all intense and purposes auxiliary verbs and cannot be used alone.

"Nē نے" is never used in conjunction with these two verbs.

‡ Negative nahīn نہیں is always placed between all compound verbs.

VOCABULARY 3.

To serve	{ <i>naukarī karnā</i> نوڪري ڪرنا	To attend	= <i>hānir honā</i> حاضر هونا
To retire from service	{ <i>pension lenā</i> پنشن لڌا	To build	= <i>banānā</i> ٻڌانا
Belief	= <i>yaqīn</i> يقين	To search	{ <i>talāsh karnā</i> تلاش ڪرنا
To believe	{ <i>yaqīn karnā</i> يقين ڪرنا	Health	= <i>tanḍarustī</i> تندرستي
To assure	{ <i>yaqīn dilānā</i> يقين دلانا	Healthy	= <i>tanḍarust</i> تندرست
To rest assured	{ <i>yaqīn rakhnā</i> يقين رکھڻا	Object, purpose or meaning	{ <i>matlab</i> مطلب
To deny or To refuse	{ (<i>sē</i>) <i>inkār karnā</i> (نه) انڪار ڪرنا	Battle or war	= <i>larāī</i> لڙائي
Street	= <i>gaḷī</i> گلی	Easily	= <i>āsānī sē</i> آساني ۽
Sun	= <i>sūraj</i> سورج	Through	= <i>mēn sē</i> مھن ۽
		Thus	{ <i>is tarah sē</i> ايس طرح ۽
		Statement	= <i>bayān</i> بيان

IDIOMS.

At sunset	= <i>sūraj chhīpē</i>	سورج چھپي
Any farther	= <i>aur dūr</i>	اور ڊور
In turns	= <i>bārī bārī</i>	باري باري
One after another	= <i>ek dūsrā ke b'ad</i>	ايڪ ڊوسر ڪي بعد

EXERCISE VIII.—(A).

1. No one could see the way through the streets. 2. You must serve for (upto) 25 years, after that you can retire. 3. He was in bad health (sick) and was unable therefore to attend punctually. 4. He was very rich and, was, thus able to build a fine house for himself. 5. They searched for the book but could not find it. 6. The battle was over at sunset. 7. He has finished his work before time. 8. They finished their meals and set out at once for home. 9. You could easily do that in half an hour if you tried. 10. He cannot walk fast because he is a little lame. 11. I am so tired that I cannot go any farther. 12. Rest assured that he cannot deny these facts. 13. He finished many books one after the other. 14. He assured me of the truth of his statement.

EXERCISE VIII—(B).

1. Tum kyā kām kar saktē ho? 2. Woh taṇḍarust hokar bhī* yih kām jaldī nahin kar saktā. 3. Agar main bimār nah hotā to yih chāṭhī lākh chuktā. 4. Woh ham sē bārī bār. ek dūsrē kē bād mil saktē hain. 5. Chūṅkī tum kal ghair hāzīr thē, is liyē āj chhutī nahin mil saktī. 6. Woh khānā khā chukē.

۱ لگژا آدمی اونی جلدی اور تیزی سے چل نہیں سکتا ۲ ہاں صاحب میں تو وہاں جا چکا ۳ اگر تم نوکری کر نہیں سکتے تو پھر یہاں آنے سے کیا مطلب تھا ۴ ہم اسکی بات پر یقین نہیں کر سکتے کیونکہ وہ جھوٹا ہے ۵ کیا وہ بیان دینے سے انکار کر سکتا ہے ۶ اس طرح سے تو نوکری ہو نہیں سکتی

LESSON 9.

To begin = *lagnā* لگنا, **to allow** = *dēnā* دینا and **to be allowed** = *pānā* پانا

17. When translating to begin, to allow, and to be allowed, prefix the inflected infinitive of the required verb to *lagnā* لگنا, *dēnā*† دینا and *pānā* پانا

EXAMPLES.

They began to speak English = *woh angrezī bolnē lagē* وہ انگریزی بولنے لگے

Let him go or allow him to go = *usko jānē do* اُسکو جانے دو

He is allowed to read = *woh parhnē pātā hai* وہ پڑھنے پاتا ہے

VOCABULARY 9.

To scream	= <i>chillānā</i>	چلانا	A man	} <i>javān</i>	جوان
Loose	= <i>dhilā</i>	ڈھیلا	(military)		
To leave	= <i>chhornā</i>	چھوڑنا	Camp	= <i>parāo</i>	پراؤ
To let loose	{ <i>khulā-chhornā</i>	کھلا چھوڑنا	Refuge	= <i>panāh</i> (f)	پناہ
To hunt or shoot	{ <i>shikār-k.</i>	شکار کرنا	A run away	{ <i>mafrūr</i> or <i>bhaggū</i>	مفرور ہو کر
Hunter	= <i>shikārī</i>	شکاری	Temple	} <i>mandīr</i>	مندیر
			(Hindoo)		
To shoot (a gun)	{ <i>golī mār-nā</i>	گولی مارنا	Mosque (Musl.)	= <i>masjid</i> (f)	مسجد
Bullet	= <i>golī</i>	گولی	Church (Chris.)	= <i>girjā-ghar</i>	گرجا گھر
To pursue	= <i>pichhā-k.</i>	پیچھا کرنا	Permission	= <i>ijāzat</i>	اجازت
To pitch (tent)	= <i>lagānā</i>	لگانا	Recruit	= <i>rangrū!</i>	رنگروٹ
To strike (tent)	{ <i>girānā</i>	گرا نا	Reward	= <i>ina'am</i>	انعام
To knockdown					
To drop			Together	= <i>ek-sāth</i>	ایک ساتھ
			Active service	= <i>lām</i> (f)	لام

* Idiomatic expression, to be translated by "in spite of his being a healthy man."

† = Catch me going, i. e., I won't go there at all (an idiom).

‡ *Dēnā* دینا is transitive and therefore requires *nē* ے e.g.

They allowed me to come = *unhon nē mujh ko ānē diyā* انہوں نے مجھے کرائے دیا

IDIOMS.

During the night	= <i>rāt kē waqt</i>	رات کے وقت
In a few days' time	= <i>chand roz kē 'arsē mēñ</i>	چند روز کے عرصے میں
Out of doors	= <i>ghar sē bāhar</i>	گھر سے باہر
To scream at the top of one's voice	= <i>zor-zor sē chāllānā</i>	زور زور سے چلانا

EXERCISE IX—(A).

1. The servant began to cook the meal at 10 o'clock. 2. The boys began to play and scream at the top of their voices. 3. The enemy began to retreat during the night. 4. You will begin to read in a few days time. 5. We began our journey on a certain day. 6. The recruits will not be allowed to go on active service. 7. I may perhaps be allowed to speak. 8. Let the boys go out of doors. 9. He lets the dogs loose at night. 10. The hunter is allowed to enter these forests. 11. No body is allowed to shoot near Hindu temples. 12. I will let you take the reward.

EXERCISE IX—(B).

1. Colonel Sāhib tornān jānān kī ek sāth chhūṭī pā kabhī jānē nah dēngē. 2. Mandaron aur masjidon Mēñ jūliān pahankar koi jānē nah pātā. 3. Shāyad woh mujhē lām par jānē kī ijāzat dēñ.* 4. Dushman kē bhugū sīpāhī hamārē parāo mēñ ākar panāh māngnē lagē. 5. Ham kitnē mahar mēñ yih zobān bo'nē lagēngē? 6. Dushman hañē lagē aur ham unkā pichlā karnē pāyē.

۱ ہم ڈیرے گرانے لگے ۲ جب وہ پڑھنے لگینکے تو ہمارے پاس خبر پہنچینکے
۳ وہاں تک پہنچنے میں تمکو کتنی دیر لگی ۴ نکت لگا کر یہ خط ڈال دو
۵ ہم نے اپنا تمکو گرجا گھر کے نزدیک لگایا ۶ چند روز کے عرصے میں ہمیں
وہاں جانے کی اجازت ملی

* Plural is used for respect.

LESSON 10.

To be in the habit of = *karnā* کرناTo be about to = *chāhnā* چاہنا

18. When translating the frequentative (to be in the habit of, to be used to, or to be accustomed to) prefix the past participle† of the required verb to “*karnā* کرنا”, e. g.

She used to sleep four hours = *woh chār ghantē soyā karti thi*

وہ چار گھنٹے سویا کرتی تھی

19. When translating the idiom (to be about to) prefix the past participle† of the required verb to “*chāhnā* چاہنا”, e. g.

She is about to come = *woh āyā chāhti hai* وہ آیا چاہتی ہے

VOCABULARY 10

Game	= <i>shikār</i>	شکار	To march	= <i>kūch karnā</i>	کوچ کرنا
Stream	= <i>naddi</i>	ندی	To walk	= <i>sar karnā</i>	سیو کرنا
Bath	= <i>ghusāl</i>	غسل	A fair	= <i>mēlā</i>	میلا
Labourer	= <i>mazdūr</i>	مزدور	Annually	= <i>sālānā</i>	سالانہ
Labour or	} <i>mazdūri</i>	مزدوری	Temper,	} <i>mizāj</i>	مزاج
Daily wages			Disposition		
Exercise	} <i>warzish</i>	ورزش	or Health	} <i>tabī‘at</i>	طبیعت
(bodily)					
Death	= <i>maut</i>	موت	To wander	= <i>phirnā</i>	پھرنا
Forces	= <i>lashkar</i>	لشکر	To wander	} <i>idhar udhar phirnā</i>	یدھر اُدھر پھرنا
Search	= <i>talāsh (f)</i>	تلاش	about		

† (a) The past participles never change.

(b) The past participle “*jāyā* جایا” (in this phrase and not “*gayā* گیا”) of the verb (*jānā* جانا) is used with “*karnā* کرنا” (to be in the habit of) and *chāhnā* چاہنا (to be about to), e. g.

We used to go = *ham jāyā kartē thē* ہم جایا کرتے تھے

(c) “*Karnā* کرنا is, in this sense never used in tenses formed from the past participle, such cases are placed in the imperfect tense, e. g. They used to throw stones = They were in the habit of throwing stones = *woh paththar phainkā kartē thē* وہ پتھر پھینکا کرتے تھے

IDIOMS.

Amongst themselves	= <i>āpas mēṇ</i>	آپس میں
Towards sunset	= <i>din chhī pē kē qarīb</i>	دن چھپنے کے قریب
Each to his own house	= <i>apnē apnē ghar ko</i>	اپنے اپنے گھر کو

EXERCISE X-(A).

1. They used to walk 5 miles (in) an hour. 2. I used to go to see him daily. 3. He made it a practice to rise at 5 A. M. and to write his letters till* 8 every morning. a. We used to go out towards sunset and wander about in search of game. 5. She is about to learn the language. 6. He is on the point of death. 7. The enemy marched his forces across the stream and is about to give (do) battle. 8. The Hindus take a bath every day. 9. I used to like the climate of this place. 10. They used to quarrel amongst themselves, therefore each man went away to his own house. 11. A fair is held here annually.

EXERCISE X-(B).

1. Woh har roz rāt ke waqt bāhar jāyā kartē thē. 2. Dushman hamārē dāhnē flank par hamlā kiyā chāhtā thā. 3. Ham ādhī rāt ko unpar hamlā kiyā kartē thē. 4. Mazdūr log† hamēshā āpas mēṇ laṛā kartē thē. 5. Larko! kam sē kam do ghaṇṭē har roz warzish kiyā karo. 6. Woh 'aurat āyā hī chāhtī hai.

۱ کیا تم کبھی شراب پیا کرتے ہو ۲ شام کو ہم ہر روز سیر کیا کرتے
ہیں ۳ آپ کا مزاج کیسا ہے؟ ۴ میری طبیعت اچھی ہے ۵ دن چھپنے
کے قریب یہاں شکار ملا کرتا ہے ۶ اُن سپاہیوں کو دس دس روپے مہینہ پنشن
ملا کرتی تھی

* Till or until as a postposition = *tak* تک

„ „ „ conjunction = *jab tak—nahīn* جب تک - نہیں

† "Log" denotes plurality.

LESSON 11.

DIRECT SPEECH.

20. There is no "Indirect narration" in Hindustani. The 'oration-recta,' i. e., the actual words (or thoughts) of the speaker must be repeated, e. g.

He said he was going to Lahore } *us ne kahā kih main Lahore ko jātā hūn*
 He said (that*) "I am going to
 Lahore" } اُس نے کہا کہ میں لاہور کو جاتا ہوں

Except, after verbs of "telling and ordering" in the imperative tense, when it is customary to use the indirect form in conjunction with the Present Subjunctive, e. g.

Tell him to go = } *usko bolo kih jās* اُسکو بولو کہ جائے
 Tell him that he may go }

VOCABULARY 11.

To explain or To make to understand	{ <i>samjḥānā</i> سمجھانا	To obey	{ <i>hukam mānnā</i> حکم ماننا
To admit		= <i>mānnā</i> ماننا	
To prove	= <i>sābit karnā</i> ثابت کرنا	To borrow (money)	{ <i>qaraz lēnā</i> قرض لینا
To pay	= <i>adā karnā</i> ادا کرنا	Debt or loan		= qaraz قرض
To promise	{ <i>w'adā karnā</i> وعدہ کرنا	To resolve	{ <i>irādā karnā</i> ارادہ کرنا
To inquire		{ <i>daryāft karnā</i> دریافت کرنا	
To lend (things)	{ <i>māngā dēnā</i> مانگا دینا	To consider	{ <i>sochnā</i> سوچنا
To borrow (things)		{ <i>māngā lēnā</i> مانگا لینا	
To lend (money)	{ <i>qaraz dēnā</i> قرض دینا	To reflect	
			A fine	= jurmānā جرمانہ
		Custom	= <i>dastūr</i> دستور
		Blind	= <i>aṇḍhā</i> اندھا
		Possible	= <i>munskīn</i> ممکن

IDIOMS.

Shortest way = *nazdik kā rasta* نزدیک کا راستہ

As soon as he could } *jahān tak jaldī ho sakē*
 As soon as possible } جہاں تک جلدی ہو سکے

* The direct narration is always introduced by "kih" meaning "that."

EXERCISE XI.—(A).

1. He said that the rain had fallen yesterday.
2. He made them understand that he would soon return to them.
3. He admitted he had not worked very hard.
4. I replied if my mistake was proved, I would pay the fine.
5. They told him they would never believe what he had said.
6. He replied he would prove what he had said to be true.
7. All who heard this, said that he was speaking the truth.
8. He promised them he would do it as soon as he could.
9. He inquired of me which was the shortest way back.
10. He asked his friend to be kind enough to lend him his book.
11. He resolved he would drink no more wine.
12. Did he say he was new to the place and that he did not know the customs of the country ?

EXERCISE XI.—(B).

1. *Ek ādmī nē kahā kih mērā unṭ khoyā gayā hai.*
2. *Darwāsh nē jawāb mēṇ pūchhā kih kyā woh aṇḍhā hai ?*
3. *Woh bolā kih main nē āpkā jānwar nahīn dēkhā.*
4. *Woh bolē kih ham is sāl pahār nahīn jāēṅgē.*
5. *Woh kahē haiṇ kih ham tumhārī bāt nahīn suntē.*
6. *Naṭkarōṇ ko hukam dēṇ† kih fūran idhar āēṇ.*

- ۱ صاحب کا حکم ہے کہ اسی وقت چلے جاؤ
- ۲ ہم نے سوچا تھا کہ یہ جو صورت ہوگی †
- ۳ تم کو ہمارا حکم مالنا ہوگا
- ۴ ہم نے اُس سے دس روپے قرض لئے
- ۵ اُس کا امتحان پاس کرنا نا ممکن ہے
- ۶ حکم ہے کہ جہاں تک جلدی ہو سکے جرمانہ ادا کر دو

† A form of polite imperative. (Present Subjunctive).

† *Hogī* = must be, also will be.

SUMMARY TO PART II.

Hindustani compound verb.	English translation.	Is used with the	Examples.
<i>Saknā</i>	= To be able, or can	Root	To be able to speak = <i>bol saknā</i> .
<i>Chaknā</i>	= To have done or finished	Root	To finish speaking = <i>bol chaknā</i> .
<i>Lagnā</i>	= To begin	Inflected Infinitive	To begin to speak = <i>bolnē-lagnā</i> .
<i>Dēnā</i> *	= To allow	Ditto	To allow to speak = <i>bolnē-dēnā</i> .
<i>Pānā</i>	= To be allowed	Ditto	To be allowed to speak = <i>bolnē-pānā</i> .
<i>Chāhnā</i> *	= To wish	Infinitive (uninflected)	To wish to speak = <i>bolnā-chāhnā</i> .
<i>Chāhnā</i>	= To be about to	Past participle	To be about to speak = <i>bolā-chāhnā</i> .
<i>Karnā</i>	= To be in the habit of	Ditto	To be in the habit of speaking = <i>bolā-karnā</i> .

<i>Chāhiyē</i>	=	Must, ought, or should	"Ko" after the subject and the required verb in the infinitive	I must speak = <i>mujh ko bolnā-chāhiyē.</i>
<i>Chāhiyē thā</i>	=	Ought to have, or should have	Ditto	I ought to have spoken = <i>mujh ko bolnā-chāhiyē thā.</i>
<i>Parā</i>	=	To be compelled to, or to have to	Ditto	I had to speak = <i>mujh ko bolnā parā.</i>
<i>Hotā</i>	=	To be obliged to, or to have to	Ditto	I shall have to speak = <i>mujh ko bolnā hotā.</i>
<i>Mānā</i>	=	To get, obtain, find or receive	"Ko" after the subject	I got a book = <i>mujh ko kitāb mā.</i>
<i>Mīnā</i>	=	To meet	"Ko" or "sē" after the object	I met him = <i>main usko or us-sē mī.</i>
<i>Dākhnā*</i>	=	To see	Inflected present participle	To see speaking = <i>bolte dēkhnā.</i>
<i>Sunnā*</i>	=	To hear	Ditto	To hear speaking = <i>bolte sunnā.</i>

* Are transitive verbs.

APPENDIX "A."

CAUSATIVE VERBS.

1. An intransitive verb is converted into a transitive verb by inserting (A) between the Root and the infinitive termination. To form the Causative, insert (wa) instead of (A).

EXAMPLES.

Intransitives.			Transitives		
To walk	= <i>chalnā</i>	حلا	To make to go	= <i>chalānā</i>	چلانا
To fly	= <i>ur̥nā</i>	اُڑنا	To fly	= <i>ur̥ānā</i>	اُڑانا
To burn	= <i>jalnā</i>	حلا	To burn	= <i>jalānā</i>	جلانا
To get up	= <i>uṭhnā</i>	اُٹھنا	To lift up	= <i>uṭhānā</i>	اُٹھانا
To fear	= <i>ḍarnā</i>	ڌرنا	To frighten	= <i>ḍarānā</i>	ڌرانا
To retreat	= <i>haṭnā</i>	هٽنا	To repulse	= <i>haṭānā</i>	هٽانا
To meet	= <i>milnā</i>	ملا	To mix	= <i>milānā</i>	ملانا
To wait	= <i>ṭhairnā</i>	ٽھرنا	To stop	= <i>ṭhairānā</i>	ٽھرانا
To fall	= <i>gir̥nā</i>	گرا	To fell	= <i>gir̥ānā</i>	گرا
To run	= <i>daurnā</i>	دوڑنا	To make to run	= <i>daurānā</i>	دوڑانا

2. The undermentioned are some of the verbs, which although complying with the above rule, also shorten or lengthen their initial (or medial) vowel, viz—

Intransitives.			Transitives.		
To run away	= <i>bhāgnā</i>	بھاگنا	To put to flight	= <i>bhagānā</i>	بھاگانا
To wake up	= <i>jāgnā</i>	جاگنا	To awaken	= <i>jaḡānā</i>	جاگانا
To lie down	= <i>leṭnā</i>	لٽنا	To lay down	= <i>liṭānā</i>	لٽانا
To speak	= <i>bolnā</i>	ڀولنا	To call	= <i>bulānā</i>	ڀلانا
To sit down	= <i>baṭhnā</i>	ٻٽھڻا	To make to sit	= <i>biṭhānā</i>	ٻٽھڻا
To come out	= <i>nikulnā</i>	نڪلنا	To take out	= <i>nikālānā</i>	نڪالنا
To die	= <i>marnā</i>	مرنا	To strike	= <i>mār̥nā</i>	مارنا
To be fastened	= <i>bandhnā</i>	بندھڻا	To fasten	= <i>bāndhnā</i>	پاڻدھڻا
To be opened	= <i>khulnā</i>	کھلنا	To open	= <i>kholnā</i>	کھولنا
To be stopped or	} <i>ruk̥nā</i>	رڪڻا	To stop	= <i>rok̥nā</i>	روڪڻا
To stop					
To see	= <i>dekh̥nā</i> *	ڏيکھڻا	To show	= <i>dikh̥ānā</i>	ڏيکھانا

3. The following are some of the irregular verbs and must be committed to memory, viz:—

To give	= <i>dēnā</i>	ڏيڻا	To cause to give	= <i>dilānā</i>	ڏلانا
To drink	= <i>pīnā</i>	پيڻا	To cause to drink	= <i>pilānā</i>	پلانا
To eat	= <i>khānā</i>	کھانا	To feed	= <i>khilānā</i>	کھلانا
To wash	= <i>dhoṇā</i>	دھوڻا	To cause to be washed	} <i>dhulānā</i>	دھلانا

* It is a transitive verb.

To sew	= <i>sīnā</i>	سینا	To cause to be sewn	= <i>silānā</i>	سلانا
To be broken	= <i>ṭupnā</i>	ٹوٹنا	To break	= <i>ṭorṇā</i>	ٹورنا
To live	= <i>rahnā</i>	رہنا	To keep	= <i>rakhnā</i>	رکھنا
To be sold	= <i>bīknā</i>	بیکنا	To sell	= <i>bīchnā</i>	بیچنا
To be left	= <i>chhūṭnā</i>	چھوٹنا	To leave	= <i>chhoṛnā</i>	چھوڑنا
To sleep	= <i>sonā</i>	سونا	To put to sleep	= <i>sulānā</i>	سلانا

4. By inserting "A or wa" to a transitive verb, the causative form is obtained, e.g.

To read	= <i>parhnā</i>	پڑھنا	To teach	= <i>parhānā</i>	پڑھانا
To do.	= <i>karnā</i>	کرنا	To cause to do	= <i>karānā</i>	کرائنا
To write	= <i>likhnā</i>	لکھنا	To get to write	= <i>likhānā</i>	لکھانا

Note—Causative verbs always require "se" (and not *ko*) with the indirect object if any.

e.g. I made him do this work

main nē us sē yeh kām karāyā میں نے اُس سے یہ کام کرایا

APPENDIX "B."

INTENSIVES.*

Intensives are formed by adding the undermentioned verbs to the Root of the required verb.

The intensives strengthen or slightly alter the significance of the root verb.

• They are—

Intensives used with Transitive Verbs

<i>rakhnā</i>	رکھنا
<i>chhoṛnā</i>	چھوڑنا
<i>denā</i>	دینا
<i>lenā</i>	لینا
<i>ḍālnā</i>	ڈالنا
<i>jānā</i>	جانا
<i>rahnā</i>	رہنا

Intensives used with Intransitive Verbs.

<i>parnā</i>	پڑنا
<i>uṭhnā</i>	اُٹھنا
<i>jānā</i>	جانا
<i>rahnā</i>	رہنا

Use of the above intensives.

(a). "*Rakhnā* (رکھنا)" signifies "already or to do a thing beforehand," e. g.

I have cleaned the room ("already" understood) =

main nē kamrā sāf kar rakhlā hai میں نے کمرہ صاف کر رکھا ہے

* The intensives are frequently used except in the negative and prohibitive sentence.

(b). "*Chhoṛnā* چھوڑنا" means "to succeed after an effort or to manage to do anything," e. g.

We managed to drive (or succeeded in driving) the enemy back=
ham nē dushman ko haṭā chhoṛā ہم نے دشمن کو ہٹا چھوڑا

(c). "*Dēnā* دینا" denotes an advantage to the person for whom anything is done, i. e., to do anything for some one else, e. g.

Write this letter (for me or for some one else)=

yih chūṭhī likh do یہ چٹھی لکھ دو

(d). "*Lēnā* لینا" indicates an advantage to the "doer," i. e., to do anything for one's own sake, e. g.

Read this book (to yourself or for your own benefit)=

yih kī'āb parh lo یہ کتاب پڑھ لو

(e). "*Ḍālnā* ڈالنا" indicates "force," e. g.

Kill him=*usko mār ḍālo* اُس کو مار ڈالو

(f). "*Parnā* پڑنا" and "*uṣhnā* اُٹھنا"="suddenness," e. g.

He fell down=*woh gir parā* وہ گر پڑا

He spoke out=*woh bol uṭhā* وہ بول اُٹھا

(g). "*Rahnā* رہنا" and "*jānā* جانا" indicate "completion," e. g.

He ate up all the bread=*woh tamām roti khā gayā* وہ تمام روٹی کھا گدا

APPENDIX "C."

Special use of *rahnā* رہنا and *jānā* جانا

(a) "*Rahnā* رہنا" added to the Present Participle of another Verb indicates "continuation," e. g.

To go on, to keep on or to continue speaking=*boltā rahnā* بولتا رہنا

She keeps on speaking=*woh bolti rahī hai* وہ بولتی رہتی ہے

(b). "*Rahnā*" in its Perfect tense, if added to the Root of another Verb, indicates "strictly present action," e. g.

He is writing (now)=*woh likh rahā hai* وہ لکھ رہا ہے

While "*woh likhtā hai* وہ لکھتا ہے" Might mean "he is writing (now) or he writes" (always)

(c). "*Rahnā*" in its Pluperfect tense, if added to the Root of another Verb, signifies an action at one particular time in the past, e. g.

He was writing=*woh likh rahā thā* وہ لکھ رہا تھا

While "*woh likhtā thā* وہ لکھتا تھا" Might mean "he was writing or he used to write."

(d). The Present Participle of any Verb, if prefixed to "*jānā* جانا," means "progression or by degrees," e. g.

He is getting better dully=

woh utz roz achhā hotā jātā hai وہ روز روز اچھا ہوتا جا رہا ہے

Exception.

Jātā rahnā جاتا رہنا = to be lost.

PART III.

SECTION 1.

MILITARY WORDS.

1. Titles.

King-Emperor	= <i>malik mu'azzam</i>	ملک معظم	Senior-Officer	} <i>barā-afsar</i>	برافسر
King	= <i>bādshāh</i>	بادشاہ	Junior-Officer	{ <i>chhoṭā-afsar</i>	چھوٹا افسر
Viceroy	= <i>mulki-lāṭ</i>	ملکی لائٹ	Staff-Officer	= <i>staff-afsar</i>	سٹاف افسر
Commander-in-Chief	{ <i>jāngi-lāṭ</i>	جنگی لائٹ	Station-Staff Officer	{ <i>station-staff-afsar</i>	سٹیشن سٹاف افسر
General	{ <i>general or jarnail</i>	جنرل-جرنیل	Orderly-Officer	{ <i>ardlī-afsar</i>	اردلی افسر
Lieutenant-General	{ <i>lieutenant-general</i>	لفٹنٹ جنرل	Medical-Officer	{ <i>doctor-māhib</i>	ڈاکٹر صاحب
Major-General	{ <i>major-general</i>	میجر جنرل	Priest (Christian)	{ <i>pādri</i>	پادری
General-Officer-Commanding	{ <i>jarnail-kamān-afsar</i>	جرنیلی کامان افسر	Priest (Hindu).	{ <i>paṇḍit</i>	پنڈت
Adjutant-General	{ <i>ajūṭan-jarnail</i>	اجیٹن جنرل	Priest (Muslim)	{ <i>maulvi</i>	مولوی
Colonel	= <i>colonel</i>	کرنیل	Priest (Sikh)	= <i>garamthi</i>	گرنٹی
Lieutenant-Colonel	{ <i>lieutenant-colonel</i>	لفٹنٹ کرنیل	Comrade	= <i>sāthi</i>	ساتھی
Officer-Commanding	{ <i>kamān-afsar</i>	کمان افسر	Orderly or despatch-rider	<i>ardali</i>	اردلی
Major	= <i>major</i>	میجر	Hospital orderly	<i>haspatāl kā ardali</i>	ہسپتال کا اردلی
Captain	= <i>captān</i>	کپتان	Veternary-Surgeon	{ <i>salotari-doctor</i>	سلوٹری ڈاکٹر
Lieutenant	= <i>lieutenant</i>	لفٹنٹ	Assistant-Surgeon	{ <i>assistant-surgeon</i>	اسسٹنٹ سرجن
Second Lieutenant	{ <i>second lieutenant</i>	سیکنڈ لفٹنٹ	Subordinate	= <i>mātahat</i>	ماتھٹ
A. D. C.	= <i>masāhib</i>	مصاحب	Indian Officer	= <i>sardār</i>	سردار
Engineer	= <i>engineer</i>	انجینئر	Senior Indian Officer (C)*	{ <i>risāldār-majōr</i>	رِسالدَار میجر
Cantonment-Magistrate	{ <i>chhāoni-kā-magistrate</i>	چھاونی کا میجسٹریٹ	Senior Indian Officer (I)*	{ <i>subēdār-majōr</i>	سبِہ دَار میجر
Adjutant	= <i>ajūṭan</i>	اجیٹن	Indian Captain (C)*	{ <i>risāldār</i>	رِسالدَار
Quarter-Master	{ <i>koṭ-master</i>	کوٹ ماسٹر			
Officer	= <i>afsar</i>	افسر			

* "C" = Cavalry. "I" = Infantry.

Indian Captain (I)*	{ <i>subedār</i> سریدار	Riding-Master	{ <i>riding-master</i> رایدنگ ماسٹر
Lieutenant (Indian)	{ <i>jam'adār</i> جمعدار	School-Master	{ <i>school-master</i> سکول ماسٹر
Non-Commissioned-Officer	{ <i>'ahdēdār</i> عہدیدار	Band-Master	{ <i>band-master</i> بینڈ ماسٹر
Sergeant (C)*	= <i>daf'adār</i> دہندار	Drill-Instructor	{ <i>qawā'id-sikhānō-wālā</i> قواعد سکھانے والا
Sergeant (I)*	= <i>havaldār</i> حوالدار	Gymnasium-Instructor	{ <i>akhārā-sikhānō-wālā</i> اکھاڑا سکھانے والا
Sergeant-Major	{ <i>havaldār or daf'adār major</i> حوالدار یا دہندار میجر	Musketry-Instructor	{ <i>chāndmārī sikhānō-wālā</i> چاند ماری سکھانے والا
Quarter-Master-Sergeant	{ <i>koṭ-havaldār or koṭ-daf'adār</i> کوٹ حوالدار یا کوٹ دہندار	Signalling-Instructor	{ <i>jhandī-sikhānō-wālā</i> جھنڈی سکھانے والا
Pay-Sergeant	<i>pay-havildār</i> پے حوالدار	Camel-driver	= <i>sārān</i> ساربان
Lance-Sergeant	{ <i>lains-havaldār</i> لینس حوالدار	Cart-driver	= <i>gārī-bān</i> گاڑی بان
Corporal	= <i>nāyak</i> نایک	Muleteer	= <i>darābī</i> درابی
Lance-Corporal	{ <i>lains-nāyak</i> لینس نایک	Scout	= <i>scout</i> سکاؤٹ
A Private Soldier (E)*	{ <i>gorah</i> گورہ	Sentry	= <i>sentry</i> سنٹری
A Private Soldier Indian (I)*	{ <i>siyāhī</i> سیاہی	Guide	= <i>rāhbar</i> راہبر
A Trooper	= <i>sawār</i> سوار	Spy	= <i>jāsūs</i> جاسوس
A Recruit	= <i>rangrūf</i> رنگرٹ	Peon	= <i>chaprāsī</i> چپراسی
Interpreter	= <i>mutrajjim</i> مترجم	Watchman	= <i>chowkidār</i> چوکیدار
		Stretcher-bearer	{ <i>doli-bearā</i> ڈولی بیرا
		Followers	= <i>fālwar-log</i> فالور لوگ
		Groom	= <i>sāis</i> سائیس
		Deserter or Fugitive	{ <i>bhaggā or maf'rūr</i> مفرور یا بھاگ

2. Army.

Army or garrison	{ <i>fauj (f)</i> فوج	Indian-regiment	{ <i>kālī-paltan</i> کالی پلٹن
Navy	= <i>bahri-fauj</i> بحری فوج	British Infantry Regiment	{ <i>lāl-kurti</i> لال کرتی
Artillery	= <i>top-khānā</i> توپ خانہ		
Battery	= <i>bātrī</i> باتری		
Cavalry	= <i>risāla</i> رسالہ	Battalion	= <i>battalion</i> بٹالین
Squadron	= <i>squadron</i> سکواڈرون	Section	= <i>section</i> سیکشن
Troop	= <i>troop</i> ٹروپ	Company	= <i>company</i> کمپنی
Platoon	= <i>platoon</i> پلٹون	Sappers and miners or pioneers	{ <i>safar-mainā</i> سفر مینا
Regiment	= <i>paltan (f)</i> پلٹن		
Foot-regiment	{ <i>piyādāh-paltan</i> پیادہ پلٹن	Reserve	= <i>reserve fauj</i> ریزرو فوج

* "C" = Cavalry. "I" = Infantry. "E" = English.

Detachment	= <i>dātā</i>	دستہ	Porter Corps	} <i>coolie-corps</i>	فلی کور
	= <i>foli</i>	تولی	or Labour Corps		
Supply and Transport Corps	} <i>supply transport corps</i>	سیلابی ٹرانسپورٹ کور	Column	= <i>column</i>	کالم
			Flying column	} <i>flying column</i>	فلاٹنگ کالم
			Flying corps		
				= <i>hawāi fauj</i>	ہوائی فوج

3. Arms.

Arms or Weapons	} <i>hathyār</i>	ہتھیار	Hammar	= <i>mārtol</i>	مار تول
			Handle	= <i>dastah</i>	دستہ
Ammunition	= <i>golī bārūt</i>	گولی باروت	Hilt	= <i>qabzah</i>	قبضہ
Accoutrements	} <i>wardī hā sāmān</i>	وردی کا سامان	Instrument or tools	} <i>hathyār or auzār</i>	ہتھیار-اوزار
Arsenal	= <i>salāh-khānā</i>	سلاح خانہ	Knife	= <i>chhurī</i>	چھری
Axe	= <i>kulhārī</i>	کلہاڑی	} <i>khokhri</i>	کھوکھری	
Bayonet	= <i>saṅgin (f)</i>	سنگین	Knife (Gur-kha)		
Bullet	= <i>golī</i>	گولی	} <i>nēzā</i>	نیزا	
Barrel	= <i>nālī</i>	نلی	Lance or spear		
Blade	= <i>phal</i>	پہل	Machine-gun	= <i>mākīm-gun</i>	میکسم گن
Butt (of a rifle)	} <i>kundah</i>	کنده	Pick-axe	= <i>gaintī</i>	گینتی
Bolt (of a rifle)			Pistol or revolver	} <i>pistunl (f)</i>	پستول
	} <i>kābla</i>	کابلہ	Point		
				= <i>nok (f)</i>	نوی
Bull's eye	= <i>guljharī</i>	گلچھری	Ramrod	= <i>gaz</i>	گز
Cannon	= <i>top (f)</i>	توپ	Rust	= <i>zang</i>	زنگ
Cartridges	= <i>kārtūs</i>	کار توس	Rifle	= <i>rafal (f)</i>	رفل
Cartridges (blank)	} <i>shalki-kārtūs</i>	شلی کی کار توس	Sword (Indian)	} <i>talwār (f)</i>	تلوار
Cartridge (empty)	= <i>khālī kārtūs</i>	خالی کار توس	Sword (English)	= <i>kirach (f)</i>	کریچ
Foresight	= <i>foresight</i>	فور سائٹ	} <i>miyān</i>	میہان	
Forelook	= <i>chofi</i>	چوفی	Scabbard or sheathe		
Frog (bayonet etc.)	} <i>hoṭhā</i>	کوٹھی	Shell	= <i>golāh</i>	لہ
			Shovell	= <i>bēlchā</i>	
Gun	= <i>baṇḍūq (f)</i>	بندوق			

4. Equipment.

Badge	= <i>billā</i>	بلا	Bottle	} <i>pānī-kī-botel</i>	پانی کی بوتل
Bag	= <i>thālā</i>	تھیلہ	(water)		
Bandolier	= <i>partalā</i>	پرتلا	Boots	= <i>būṭ</i>	بوٹ
Bedding	= <i>bistar</i>	بستر	} <i>gutī-kē-lace or boot-lace</i>	کے لیس	جوتی یا بوٹ کے لیس
Belt	= <i>pāṭī</i>	پینٹی	Boot-laces		
Blanket	= <i>kammāl</i>	کمل	Buckle	= <i>baṭṭā</i>	بٹسوا
Bottle	= <i>botāl (f)</i>	بوتل			

Bucket	= <i>dol</i>	نول	Look	= <i>tālā</i>	ناو
Bugle	= <i>bigal</i> (f)	بگل	Loin-cloth	= <i>langoṭ</i>	لنگوٹ
Bundle	= <i>gaṭhri</i>	گٹھڑی	Mackintosh	= <i>barsāti</i>	برساتی
Button	= <i>buṭṭon</i>	بٹن	Matting	= <i>chaṭāi</i>	چٹائی
Cap	= <i>ṭopī</i>	ٹوپی	Mattress	= <i>toṣhak</i>	توشک
Clasp	= <i>kāṛī</i>	کڑی	Medal	= <i>taghmā</i>	تغمہ
Coat	{ <i>coat</i> or <i>kurti</i>	کوٹ یا کورتی	Needle	= <i>sūī</i>	سرنئی
Coat (great)	= <i>bārān coat</i>	باران کوٹ	Numerals	= <i>number</i>	نمبر
Collar	= <i>collar</i>	کالر	Pants	= <i>patloon</i> (f)	پنٹلون
Compass	= <i>compass</i>	کیمپاس	Plate	= <i>rikābi</i>	رکابی
Cup	= <i>pyāla</i>	پیالہ	Pocket	= <i>jēb</i> (f)	جیب
Dress	= <i>libās</i>	لباس	Ponche-	= <i>toṣhdān</i>	توشدان
Drum	= <i>ḍhol</i>	ڈھول	Putties	= <i>paṭiyān</i>	پٹیان
Drum (kettle)	= <i>naqqāra</i>	نقارہ	Quilt	= <i>razāī</i>	رضائی
Entrenching tools	{ <i>morchā banānē kē auzār</i>	مورچہ بنانے کے اوزار	Razor	= <i>ustarā</i>	اُسترا
Equipment	= <i>sāmān</i>	سامان	Ribbon	= <i>fita</i>	فیتہ
Fork	= <i>kānṭā</i>	کانٹا	Scissors	= <i>quāncī</i>	قینچی
Handkerchief	= <i>rūmal</i>	ررمال	Sheet	= <i>chādar</i> (f)	چادر
Hat or Helmet	{ <i>ṭopī</i>	ٹوپی	Shirt	= <i>qamiz</i> (f)	قمیض
Gas-Helmet	= <i>gas ṭopī</i>	گیس ٹوپی	Sleeve	= <i>āstīn</i> (f)	آستین
Haversack	= <i>jholā</i>	جھولا	Shoe	= <i>jūti</i>	جوتی
Hook	= <i>kunḍā</i>	کنڈا	Socks	= <i>jurrābēn</i>	جرابین
Jersey	{ <i>jersey</i> or <i>banyān</i> (f)	جرسی بلیان	Soap	= <i>sābun</i>	صابن
Key	= <i>chābī</i>	چابی	Spoon	= <i>chamchī</i>	چمچا
Kettle	= <i>ḍegchī</i>	ڈیگچی	Strap	= <i>tasmā</i>	تسمہ
Kit-bag	{ <i>sāmān kā thailā</i>	سامان کا تھیلہ	Telescope	= <i>dūrbīn</i> (f)	دور بین
Kit	= <i>sāmān</i>	سامان	Thread	= <i>dhāgā</i>	دھاگا
Knife (pocket)	= <i>chāqū</i>	چاقو	Towel	= <i>taulīyā</i>	تولیہ
Knife (table)	= <i>chhūrī</i>	چھری	Tunic	= <i>ṭunīr</i>	ٹونیک
			Turban	= <i>pagṛī</i>	پگڑی
			Underwear	= <i>banyān</i> (f)	بنیان
			Uniform	= <i>wardī</i>	وردی
			Walking stick	= <i>chhapī</i>	چھڑی
			Water proof	= <i>barsāti</i>	برساتی
			Whip	= <i>chābuk</i> (f)	چابک

5. War Words.

Action (battle or engagement)	{ <i>larāī, jang</i>	لڑائی-جنگ	Air ship	{ <i>hawāī jahāz</i>	ہوائی جہاز
Accident	= <i>hādīsa</i>	حادثہ	Aeroplane	= <i>airoplane</i>	ایئر پلائن
Active service	= <i>lām</i> (f)	لام	Ally	= <i>dost</i>	دوست
Advantage	= <i>fāyḍāh</i>	فائدہ	Ambush	= <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ
			Angle	= <i>kānā</i>	کونا

Articles of war	{ <i>jangī āin</i> جنگی آئین	Word of command	{ <i>hukam</i> حکم
Assault	= <i>hallā</i> ہلا	Under the command	{ <i>kō zēr hukam</i> کوزر حکم
Attack	= <i>hamlā</i> حملہ	of	{
Back ground	{ <i>piehhē kī chāzēn</i> پیچھے کی چیزیں	Communication	{ <i>lagāo</i> لگاؤ
Battle	= <i>larāi</i> لڑائی	Line of communication	{ <i>lagāo kā silsilā</i> لگاؤ کا سلسلہ
Battle field	{ <i>maidān-i-jang</i> میدان جنگ	Communication (inter)	{ <i>āpas kā lagāo</i> آپس کا لگاؤ
Band	= <i>bājā</i> با جا	Committee	{ <i>kamaiti or panchāyat</i> کمیٹی یا پنچایت
Barraacks	= <i>bārag (f)</i> بارگ	Cook house	{ <i>bāwarchi khānā</i> باررچی خانہ
Barriade	= <i>rok (f)</i> روک	Competition	{ <i>muqābla</i> مقابلہ
Bellingerent	= <i>jangī</i> جنگی	Contract	= <i>shēkā</i> ٹھیکہ
Besiege	{ <i>muhāsarā or ghērā</i> محاصرہ یا گھیرا	Contractor	= <i>shēkēdār</i> ٹھیکہ دار
Bivouac	{ <i>fauj kū rāt kā maqām</i> فوج کا رات کا مقام	Convoy	= <i>badraqā</i> بدو قہ
Bombardment	= <i>golā bārī</i> گولہ باری	Courage	= <i>dilīrī</i> دلیری
Booty	= <i>lūt</i> لوٹ	Cover	= <i>ār (f)</i> آڑ
Boundary	= <i>had (f)</i> حد	Coward	= <i>dar-pok</i> ذر پوک
Breast work	= <i>sangar</i> سانگر	Crisis	{ <i>nāzūk mauqā</i> نازی مروقعہ
Burning ground	{ <i>shamshān</i> شمشان	Dak bungal-low	{ <i>dāk bangla</i> داک بنگلہ
Bush	= <i>jhārī</i> جھاری	Damage (loss, harm)	{ <i>nuqsān</i> نقصان
Camp	= <i>paṛāo</i> پڑاؤ	Danger	= <i>khatrā</i> خطرا
Cart	= <i>gārī</i> گاڑی	Decoration	= <i>u'ilān</i> اعلان
Caste	= <i>zāt</i> ذات	Death	= <i>maut</i> موت
Caution (care)	{ <i>khalardārī</i> خنر داری	Declaration	= <i>tamgha</i> تمغہ
Casualty	{ <i>murdē aur zakhmī</i> مردے اور زخمی	Defeat	= <i>shikast</i> شکست
Total Casualties	{ <i>murdē aur zakhmī mion kī tadād</i> مردے اور زخمیوں کی تعداد	Defence	= <i>bachāo</i> بچاؤ
Cells	{ <i>kānjī house</i> کانجی ہوس	Department	= <i>mahkamā</i> محکمہ
Cemetery	= <i>qabristān</i> قبرستان	Discipline	= <i>tartīb (f)</i> ترتیب
Charcoal	= <i>koela</i> کوئلہ	Disaster	= <i>ūfat</i> آفت
Ciphēr	= <i>khufyā lafz</i> خفیہ لفظ	Description	= <i>huliyā</i> حلیہ
Circle	= <i>chakkar</i> چکر	Duty	{ <i>farz or naukari</i> فرض یا نوکری
Coal	{ <i>pathihar kā koela</i> پتھر کا کوئلہ	Embankment	= <i>band</i> بند
Command	{ <i>kamān or hukam</i> کمان یا حکم	Embarkation	{ <i>jahāz par sarwār</i> جہاز پر سوار ہونا
		Emergency	{ <i>zarūrat kā waqt</i> ضرورت کا وقت

Enclosure	= <i>shālā</i>	احاطہ	Manoeuvres	= <i>manāhar</i>	مانور
Escort	= <i>badragā</i>	بد رتہ	March	= <i>kūch</i>	گوج
Exercise	{ <i>kasrat or warzish</i>	کثرت یا ورزش	——— quick	= <i>tēz chāl</i>	تیز چال
Expedition	{ <i>lām or muhīm (f)</i>	لام یا مہم	——— slow	= <i>āhista chāl</i>	آہستہ چال
Fatigue	{ <i>fatig or takān (f)</i>	مذہک یا تکان	——— night	= <i>rāt kā kūch</i>	رات کا گوج
Fatigue party	{ <i>halla gulla karnē wali party</i>	ہالہ گلہ کرنڈوالی پارٹی	——— route	= <i>route march</i>	روزت مارچ
Fence	= <i>bār (f)</i>	باز	——— forced	= <i>sakht kūch</i>	سخت گوج
Ferry	= <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ	Message	= <i>paighām</i>	پیغام
Festival	= <i>teohār</i>	تہوار	Microscope	= <i>khurd bin</i>	خورد بین
Flag	{ <i>jhandī or jhandā</i>	جھنڈی یا جھنڈا	Motion or Movement	{ <i>harkat</i>	حرکت
Flank	{ <i>flank or bāzū</i>	فلینک یا بازو	Neutral	{ <i>ghair jānīb dār</i>	غیر جانبدار
Fort	= <i>qil'aa</i>	قلعہ	Neutrality	{ <i>ghair jānīb dārī</i>	غیر جانبداری
Fortifications	{ <i>morchā-bandī</i>	مورچہ بندی	News	= <i>khabar (f)</i>	خبر
Frontier	= <i>sarhadd (f)</i>	سرحد	Newspaper	= <i>akhbār</i>	اخبار
Gate	= <i>phāṭak</i>	پھاٹک	Object	= <i>matlab</i>	مطلب
Gravel	= <i>kankar</i>	کندر	Obstacle	= <i>rok (f)</i>	روک
Grave	= <i>qabr</i>	قبر	Occasion	= <i>mauqā</i>	موقعہ
Grave yard	= <i>qabristān</i>	قبرستان	Opposition	= <i>mulkhālifāt</i>	مخالفت
Grievance	= <i>shikāyat</i>	شکایت	Ordnance stores	{ <i>top khānē kā samān</i>	توپ خانے کا سامان
Habit	= <i>'ādat</i>	عادت	Organisation	{ <i>intizām-bandolast</i>	انتظام - بندوبست
Harbour	= <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ	Out-post	= <i>chauki</i>	چوکی
Hill	= <i>pahāri</i>	پہاڑی	Pace	= <i>qadam</i>	قدم
Horse-box	= <i>horse-box</i>	ہارس بکس	Pair	= <i>jorī</i>	جوزی
Hut	= <i>jhopprī</i>	جھوپڑی	Panic	{ <i>sakht ghabrāhat</i>	سخت گھبراہٹ
Information	= <i>khatar (f)</i>	خبر	Peace	= <i>sulāh (f)</i>	صلح
Inn	= <i>sarāī (f)</i>	سرائے	Place	= <i>jagah (f)</i>	جگہ
Jail	= <i>jail khānā</i>	جیل خانہ	Plan	{ <i>tajwiz or tadbir (f)</i>	تجویز - تدبیر
Ladder	= <i>siṛhī</i>	سیڑھی	Plank	= <i>takhṭā</i>	تختہ
Lamp	= <i>lamp</i>	لیمپ	Plot	= <i>sānīah</i>	سازش
Lantern	= <i>lālṭam (f)</i>	لالٹین	Parade	= <i>qawā'id (f)</i>	قواعد
Latrine	= <i>taṭṭī</i>	تلی	Platform	= <i>chabūtrā</i>	چبوترا
Luggage	{ <i>asbāh or samān</i>	اسباب یا سامان	Post	{ <i>chauki or jagah (f)</i>	چوکی یا جگہ
Luggage van	{ <i>asbāh kā khānā</i>	اسباب کا خانہ	Post (mail)	= <i>dāk (f)</i>	ڈاک
Map	= <i>naqshā</i>	نقشہ	Post Master	{ <i>postmaster</i>	پوسٹ ماسٹر
			Post Office	= <i>dāk-khānā</i>	ڈاک خانہ

Plain	= <i>maidān</i>	میدان	Station Master	= <i>station master</i>	ستیشن ماستر
Powder	= <i>bārūd</i>	بارود	Stable	= <i>astabal</i>	استابل
Practice	= <i>maashq (f)</i>	مشق	Stream	= <i>naddi</i>	ندی
Pressure	= <i>dabāo</i>	دباؤ	Strategem	{ <i>dāon-ghāt (m)</i>	داؤن-گھاٹ (م)
Pretence	= <i>bahānā</i>	بہانہ		{ <i>padāl or nafri (f)</i>	پادال یا نفری
Pride	= <i>gharūr</i>	غرور	Strength (numerical)	{	تعداد یا نفری
Principle	= <i>asūl</i>	اصول	Substitute	= <i>badli</i>	بدلی
Prize	= <i>in'āam</i>	انعام	Stairs	{ <i>siṛhi or zinā</i>	سیڑھی یا زینہ
Public	= <i>'aām log</i>	عام لوگ	Skirmishes	{ <i>larāi bhipāi</i>	لڑائی بھپائی
Prisoner	= <i>quāidī</i>	قیدی		{	
Quarrel	= <i>jhagrā</i>	جھگڑا	Sketch	= <i>khākā</i>	خاکہ
Raid	= <i>chhāpā</i>	چھاپہ	Smoke	= <i>dhān</i>	دھواں
Railing	= <i>janglā</i>	جنگلہ	Telegram	= <i>tār (f)</i>	تار
Railway	{ <i>railwāi or rēl (f)</i>	ریل یا ریلوے	Telegraph office	{ <i>tār-ghar</i>	تار گھر
	{ <i>rēl kī sarak</i>	ریل کی سڑک		{	
Railway line	{		Telegraph Master	{ <i>tār-bābū</i>	تار بابو
	{			{	
Relief	= <i>badli</i>	بدلی	Test or trial	= <i>āzmāish</i>	آزمایش
Reprisal	= <i>badlā</i>	بدلہ	Tile	= <i>khaprā</i>	کھپرا
Religion	= <i>mashai</i>	مذہب	Tonga	= <i>tāngā</i>	ٹانگہ
Revenge	= <i>badlā</i>	بدلہ	Tower	= <i>burj</i>	برج
Review	{ <i>review or mulāhizā</i>	ریویو یا ملاحظہ	Trace	= <i>khoj</i>	کھوج
River	= <i>daryā</i>	دریا	Training	= <i>sikhāi</i>	سیکھائی
Road	= <i>sarak (f)</i>	سڑک	Train	= <i>rēl-gāri</i>	ریل گاڑی
Room	= <i>kamrā</i>	کمرہ	Train (passenger)	{ <i>musāfir-gāri</i>	مسافر گاڑی
Rubbish	= <i>kurā</i>	کڑوا	Train (goods)	= <i>māl-gāri</i>	مال گاڑی
Salute	{ <i>salūt or salām</i>	سلوٹ یا سلام	Train (mail)	= <i>dāk-gāri</i>	ڈاک گاڑی
Sacred thread	= <i>janevū</i>	جینو	Transport	= <i>bār bardāri</i>	بار برداری
Scar	= <i>dāgh</i>	داع	Treaty	= <i>'ahad-nāmā</i>	عہدنامہ
Scales	= <i>tarāzū (f)</i>	ترازو	Trench	= <i>morchā</i>	مورچہ
Scheme	= <i>tājwiz (f)</i>	تاجویز	Treatment	= <i>salūk</i>	سلوک
School	= <i>adārā</i>	مدرسہ	Treasure or Treasury	{ <i>khuzānā</i>	خزانہ
Shock	= <i>sadmā</i>	صدمہ		{ <i>farēb</i>	فریب
Sight	{ <i>nazar or nigāh (f)</i>	نظر یا نگاہ	Trust	= <i>bharosā</i>	بھروسہ
Signal	= <i>ishārā</i>	اشارہ	Tag of war	{ <i>rasā-khōnchmā</i>	رسا کھنچما
Service	= <i>naukarī</i>	نوکری		{	
Sea	= <i>samandar</i>	سمندر	Tammalt	= <i>hullar</i>	ھلڑ
Station	= <i>chhāoni</i>	چھاونی	Tunnel	= <i>sarang (f)</i>	سرنگ
Station (Railway)	{ <i>railway station</i>	ریلوے سٹیشن	Tyrant	= <i>zāim</i>	ظالم

Tyranny	= <i>zulm</i>	ظلم	War	= <i>jang</i>	جنگ
Vacancy	= <i>khālī jagah</i>	خالی جگہ	Wire	= <i>tār (f)</i>	تار
Victory	= <i>fatah (f)</i>	فتح			

6. Military Verbs.

To abandon	= <i>chhōr dēnā</i>	چھوڑ دینا	To claim	= <i>d'awā karnā</i>	دعویٰ کرنا
To abolish	{ <i>mansūkh karnā</i>	منسوخ کرنا	To compare	{ <i>mugāblā karnā</i> or <i>mīlānā</i>	مقابلہ کرنا یا ملانا
To abscond	= <i>bhāg jānā</i>	بھاگ جانا	To concent-	<i>jam'a karnā</i>	جمع کرنا
To abuse	= <i>gālī dēnā</i>	گالی دینا	rate		
To absent	{ <i>ghair hāzīr honā</i>	غیر حاضر ہونا	To condemn	= <i>raddī karnā</i>	ردی کرنا
To accuse	{ <i>ilzām lagānā</i>	الزام لگانا	To confess	{ <i>iqrār karnā</i> or <i>iqbāl karnā</i>	اقرار کرنا۔ اقبال کرنا
To acquit	= <i>karī-karnā</i>	بری کرنا	To confirm	{ <i>manzūr karnā</i>	منظور کرنا
To add	{ <i>shāmīl-honā</i>	شامل ہونا	To corrobo-	{ <i>tasdiq karnā</i>	تصدیق کرنا
To adjourn	{ <i>multawī karnā</i>	ملتوی کرنا	rate		
To admonish	= <i>tanbīh karnā</i>	تنبیہ کرنا	To confiscate	= <i>zabt karnā</i>	ضبط کرنا
To advance	= <i>āgē-barhnā</i>	آگے بڑھنا	To congra-	{ <i>mubārīk bād-dēnā</i>	مبارکباد دینا
To agree	= <i>rāzī-honā</i>	راضی ہونا	ulate		
To appoint	{ <i>muqarrar karnā</i>	مقرر کرنا	To connive at	{ <i>chaahm poshī karnā</i>	چشم پوشی کرنا
To approve	{ <i>manzūr karnā</i>	منظور کرنا	To convict	{ <i>mujrīm thairānā</i>	مجرم ٹھہرانا
To arrest	{ <i>garīftār karnā</i>	گرفتار کرنا	To counter-	{ <i>dastkhāt karnā</i>	دستخط کرنا
To backbite	{ <i>chughhī khānā</i>	چغلی کھانا	sign		
To blast	{ <i>bārūd-sē-urā dēnā</i>	بارود سے آڑا دینا	To deceive	= <i>dhoka dēnā</i>	دھوکا دینا
To cancel	{ <i>kāfnā</i> or <i>mansūkh karnā</i>	ڈالنا یا منسوخ کرنا	To degrade	{ <i>darjā tornā</i>	درجہ توڑنا
To capitulate	{ <i>hathiyār-dāl dēnā</i>	ہتھیار ڈال دینا	To demolish	{ <i>gīrānā</i> or <i>dhānā</i>	گرا ڈالنا
To carry	{ <i>lējānā</i> or <i>lē-chālnā</i>	لیجانا یا لے چلنا	To destroy	{ <i>bar-bād karnā</i>	برباد کرنا
To change	= <i>badalnā</i>	بدلنا	To detail	= <i>lagānā</i>	لگانا
To challenge	= <i>toknā</i>	ٹوکنا	To detain	= <i>rok-rahknā</i>	روک رکھنا
To charge	= <i>hailā karnā</i>	ھلے کرنا	To determine	{ <i>pakā-irādā karnā</i>	پکا ارادہ کرنا
To check	{ <i>roknā, band karnā</i>	روکنا۔ بند کرنا	To die	= <i>marjānā</i>	مر جانا
To choose	= <i>chunnā</i>	چننا	To (be) dis-	{ <i>nakamma-honā</i>	نکما ہونا
			abled		
			To disarm	{ <i>hathiyār-lēnā</i>	ہتھیار لینا
			To disband	= <i>tornā</i>	توڑنا

To discharge	= <i>nām kaṭṭānā</i> نام کٹانا	To hang	{ <i>laṣṭhānā, phānsi</i> <i>dēnā</i> لٹکانا پھانسی دینا
To dismiss	{ <i>dismiss karnā</i> ذمّس کرنا	To identify	= <i>pehchānnā</i> پہچاننا
To dismount	= <i>utarnā</i> اُترنا	To improve	{ <i>tarrāqī karnā</i> ترقّی کرنا
To disobey	{ <i>hukam na mānnā</i> حکم نہ ماننا	To inoite	= <i>ukṣānā</i> اُکسانا
To disperse	{ <i>tittar-lāttar karnā</i> تتر بتر کرنا	To increase	= <i>barhānā</i> بڑھانا
To dispute	{ <i>jhagrā karnā</i> جھگڑا کرنا	To inhabit	= <i>rahnā</i> رہنا
To distribute	{ <i>bāntnā</i> بانٹنا	To inoculate	{ <i>ṭikā lagānā</i> ٹیکہ لگانا
To divide	{ <i>bāntnā</i> بانٹنا	To inspect	{ <i>mulāhiza karnā</i> ملاحظہ کرنا
To draw	= <i>khaiṇchnā</i> کھینچنا	To instigate	{ <i>tahrīk karnā</i> تحرّیک کرنا
To employ	{ <i>naṭkar rakhnā</i> نوکر رکھنا	To insure	= <i>bimā karnā</i> بیمہ کرنا
To encamp	= <i>ḍerē ḍālānā</i> ڈیرے ڈالنا	To instruct	= <i>sikhlānā</i> سکھانا
To encourage	{ <i>himmāt dīlānā</i> ہمت دلانا	To intercept	{ <i>rāstā mēṇ rok lenā</i> راستے میں روک لینا
To endure	{ <i>bardāshṭ karnā</i> برداشت کرنا	To interfere	= <i>dalāl dēnā</i> دخل دینا
To enlist	{ <i>bhartī karnā</i> بھرتی کرنا	To interpret	{ <i>tarjūmā karnā</i> ترجمہ کرنا
To entrench	{ <i>morchī bandī karnā</i> مورچہ بندی کرنا	To invade	{ <i>charhūnā karnā</i> چڑھائی کرنا
To establish	= <i>qāim karnā</i> قائم کرنا	To invest- gate	{ <i>tahqīqāt karnā</i> تحقیقات کرنا
To exempt	{ <i>m'uaḥ karnā</i> معاف کرنا	To issue (order)	{ <i>hukam jāri karnā</i> حکم جاری کرنا
To explode	{ <i>bhak sē urnā</i> بھک سے اُڑنا	To issue (rations)	{ <i>rasad bāntnā</i> رشد بانٹنا
To faint	{ <i>bē hoṣh honā</i> بے ہوش ہونا	To kill	= <i>mār ḍālānā</i> مار ڈالنا
To fear	= <i>ḍarnā</i> ڈرنا	To leak	= <i>ṭap karnā</i> ٹپکنا
To feign	{ <i>bahānā karnā</i> بہانا کرنا	To limp	= <i>langrānā</i> لنگرانا
To fire	{ <i>golī chālīnā</i> گولی چلانا	To malling- er	{ <i>bimār bannā</i> بیمار بننا
To (open) fire	= <i>fair shur'u karnā</i> فائر شروع کرنا	To measure	= <i>nāpnā</i> ناپنا
To forgive	= <i>mu'āf karnā</i> معاف کرنا	To mobilize	{ <i>larāi kī taryāri</i> <i>karnā</i> لڑائی کی تیاری کرنا
To gamble	= <i>jūā khēlnā</i> جوا کھیلنا	To mount (pony)	{ <i>sawār honā</i> سوار ہونا
To graze	= <i>charnā</i> چرنا		
To halt	{ <i>maqām karnā</i> مقام کرنا		

To obey	{ <i>kukam mānnā</i> حکم ماننا
To object	{ <i>a'itrāz karnā</i> اعتراض کرنا
To occupy	{ <i>ikhṭiyār karnā</i> اختیار کرنا
	{ <i>qabzā karnā</i> قبضہ کرنا
To oppress	= <i>zulm karnā</i> ظلم کرنا
To parch	= <i>bhūnnā</i> بھوننا
To pardon	{ <i>m'ua'f karnā</i> معاف کرنا
To pare	= <i>chhilnā</i> چھیلنا
To penetrate	= <i>ghusnā</i> گھسننا
To play	= <i>kheelnā</i> کھیلنا
To please	{ <i>khush karnā</i> خوش کرنا
To plunder	= <i>lūnā</i> لوٹنا
To polish	{ <i>pālsh karnā</i> پالش کرنا
To pollute	= <i>gandā karnā</i> گندہ کرنا
To postpone	= <i>multawī karnā</i> ملتوی کرنا
To promote	= <i>tarraqī dēnā</i> ترقی دینا
To protect	{ <i>hifāzat karnā</i> حفاظت کرنا
To pursue	{ <i>pichhā karnā</i> پیچھا کرنا
To push	= <i>dhakēlnā</i> دھکیلنا
To rally	= <i>ikkathā honā</i> اکٹھا ہونا
To recognise	= <i>pahchānnā</i> پہچاننا
To recom- mend	{ <i>isfārish karnā</i> سفارش کرنا
To reconnoi- tre	{ <i>rikānasāns karnā</i> رکانسینس کرنا
	{ <i>dekh bhāl karnā</i> دیکھ بھال کرنا
To reduce	{ <i>darjā utārnā</i> درجہ اتارنا
To refuse	= <i>inhār karnā</i> انکار کرنا
To re-inforce	= <i>kumak dēnā</i> کمک دینا
To release	= <i>chhōrnā</i> چھوڑنا
To repair	{ <i>marammat karnā</i> مرمت کرنا
To repeal	= <i>uṣhā dēnā</i> اُٹھا دینا

To report	{ <i>report karnā or</i> <i>khabar-dēnā</i> رپورٹ کرنا یا خبر دینا
To repulse	= <i>haṭānā</i> هٹانا
To resent	= <i>burā mānnā</i> برا ماننا
To resign	{ <i>nauskari chhōrnā</i> نوکری چھوڑنا
To resist	{ <i>mulkhālifat karnā</i> مخالفت کرنا
To respect	= <i>adab karnā</i> ادب کرنا
To retire	{ <i>hṭānā or pas-pā honā</i> هٹنا یا پسپا ہونا
To run	= <i>daurnā</i> دوڑنا
To rush	= <i>jhapṭnā</i> جھپٹنا
To save	= <i>bachānā</i> بچانا
To search	= <i>talāsh karnā</i> تلاش کرنا
To segregate	= <i>alag karnā</i> الگ کرنا
To select	{ <i>muntakhīb karnā</i> منتخب کرنا
To settle (dispute)	{ <i>faislā karnā</i> فیصلہ کرنا
To settle (account)	{ <i>chukānā</i> چکانا
To share	{ <i>dāṛhī banānā</i> دازھی بنانا
To shirk	{ <i>kām sē jī churānā</i> کام سے جی چرانا
To shiver	= <i>kānpnā</i> کانپنا
To shoot	= <i>golī chalānā</i> گولی چلانا
To slip	= <i>phisalnā</i> پھسلنا
To smoke	= <i>dhuān dēnā</i> دھواں دینا
To smoke (tobacco)	{ <i>tamākū pinā</i> تدیاکو پینا
To spit	= <i>thūknā</i> تھوکرنا
To starve	{ <i>bhūkon marnā</i> بھوکوں مرنا
To succeed	{ <i>kāmyāb honā</i> کامیاب ہونا
To superin- tend	{ <i>dēkh bhāl karnā</i> دیکھ بھال کرنا
To suppose	= <i>farz karnā</i> فرض کرنا
To surprise	{ <i>achānak hamlā</i> <i>karnā</i> اچانک حملہ کرنا
To surrender	{ <i>hathiyār dāl dēnā</i> ہتھیار ڈال دینا

To surround	= <i>ghōrnā</i>	گھیرنا	To transport	= <i>dhōnā</i>	دھونا
To swear	{ <i>qasam khānā</i>	قسم کھانا	To unload	{ <i>bojh utārnā</i>	بو جھ اُتارنا
To sweat	= <i>pasinā ānā</i>	پسینہ آنا	To use	{ <i>ist'amāl karnā</i>	استعمال کرنا
To threaten	= <i>dhamkānā</i>	دھمکانا	To vaccinate	= <i>fikā lagānā</i>	ٹیکہ لگانا
To toss	= <i>uchhālānā</i>	اُچھالنا	To warn	{ <i>tambih karnā</i>	تنبیہ کرنا
To touch	= <i>chhūnā</i>	چھونا	To whisper	{ <i>kān mēṇ kahnā</i>	کان میں کہنا
To tour	= <i>daurā karnā</i>	دورہ کرنا	To whistle	= <i>siṭi bajānā</i>	سیٹی بجانا
To track	{ <i>khoj nikālānā</i>	کھوج نکالنا	To wrestle	= <i>kushtī larnā</i>	کشتی لڑنا
To transfer	= <i>badli karnā</i>	بدلی کرنا			
To translate	{ <i>tarjumā karnā</i>	ترجمہ کرنا			

7. Military Adjectives.

Able	= <i>lāiq</i>	لائق	Foreign	= <i>pardēsī</i>	پردہسی
Active	{ <i>chust-o-chālāk</i>	چست و چالاک	Hostile	= <i>mukhālif</i>	مخالف
Alert	= <i>hushyār</i>	ہوشیار	Idle	= <i>bēkār</i>	بیگار
Brave	= <i>bahādūr</i>	بہادر		{ <i>bē 'ilm or nādān</i>	بے علم یا نادان
Capable	= <i>lāiq</i>	لائق	Ignorant		
Crooked	= <i>ṭeḥā</i>	ٹوہا	Illegal	= <i>nā jāiz</i>	نا جائز
Damp	= <i>namdār</i>	نمدار	Illiterate	= <i>unparh</i>	ان پڑہ
Dark	= <i>aṇdhērā</i>	اندھیرا	Ill-timed	= <i>bē waqt</i>	بے وقت
Dead	= <i>murda</i>	مردہ	Impartial	= <i>be taraf</i>	بے طرف
Deliberately	{ <i>jān būḡh kar</i>	جان بوجھار	Imperial	= <i>shāhī</i>	شاہی
Detached	= <i>alag</i>	الگ	Impassable	{ <i>nā qābil guzar or band</i>	نا قابل گذر یا بند
Disloyal	{ <i>namak harām</i>	نمک حرام	Important	= <i>zarūrī</i>	ضروری
Dishonest	= <i>bē imān</i>	بے ایمان	Impertinent	{ <i>gustākḥ</i>	گستاخ
Distinguish-	{ <i>nāmī</i>	نامی	(insolent)		
ed			Inattentive	= <i>bē parwāh</i>	بے پرواہ
Effective	= <i>kārgar</i>	کارگر	Incompetent	= <i>nā lāiq</i>	نا لائق
Energetic	= <i>mihnatī</i>	مہنتی	Industrious	= <i>mihnatī</i>	مہنتی
Even (num-	{ <i>juft</i>	جفت	Inefficient	= <i>nā qābil</i>	نا قابل
ber)			Innocent	= <i>bē guṇāḥ</i>	بے گناہ
Exceptional	{ <i>ghair m'ammūlī</i>	غیر معمولی	Intoxicated	{ <i>nashē mēṇ</i>	نشے میں
			(drunk)		
Exemplary	{ <i>bahut hī achchhā</i>	بہت ہی اچھا	Irregular	= <i>bē qāyidā</i>	بے قاعدہ
Fair	= <i>khāsā</i>	خاصا	Isolated	= <i>akēlā</i>	اکيلا
False	= <i>jūṭhī</i>	جوڑھا	Junior	= <i>chhoṭā</i>	چھوٹا
Flat	= <i>chapṭā</i>	چپٹا	Keen	= <i>shauqīn</i>	شوقین
			Local	= <i>maqāmī</i>	مقامی

Loyal	{ <i>namak halāl</i>	نیک حلال	Spare	= <i>fāltū</i>	فالتو
Mechanical	= <i>kal kā</i>	کل کا	Square	= <i>murrab'a</i>	مربع
Military	= <i>faujī</i>	فوجی	Stale	= <i>bāsī</i>	باسی
Narrow	= <i>taṅg</i>	تنگ	Stiff	= <i>akrā hūā</i>	اکرا ہوا
Natural	= <i>qudaratī</i>	قدرتی	Straight	= <i>siḍhā</i>	سیدھا
Odd (number)	{ <i>tāq</i>	طاق	Temporary	= <i>'arazī</i>	عارضی
Official	= <i>sarkārī</i>	سرکاری	Unarmed	= <i>bē kathyār</i>	بے کھنڈار
Officiating	{ <i>qāim maqām</i>	قائم مقام	Unconscious	= <i>bē hośh</i>	بے ہوش
Original	= <i>aslī</i>	اصلی	Uneducated	= <i>an parh</i>	ان پڑھ
Parallel	{ <i>barābar-barābar</i>	برابر برابر	Unfair	{ <i>nā munāsib</i>	نا مناسیب
Permanent	= <i>mustaqīl</i>	مستقل	Unforeseen	= <i>nāghāṇ</i>	نا گھان
Private	= <i>nīj kā</i>	نہج کا	Unjust	= <i>lē insāf</i>	لے انصاف
Regular	= <i>bā qāyda</i>	با قاعدہ	Unmarried	= <i>kanwārā</i>	کنوارا
Round	= <i>gol</i>	گول	Unopposed	{ <i>bē rok tok</i>	بے روک ٹوک
Sanitory	= <i>safās kā</i>	صفائی کا	Unperceived	{ <i>āṅkh bachā kar</i>	آنکھ بچا کر
Satisfactory	{ <i>achchhā or tassallī</i>	بکھش	Unqualified	= <i>nā qābil</i>	نا قابل
Savage	= <i>jangalī</i>	جنگلی	Unsafe	= <i>khatar nāk</i>	خطر ناک
Senior	= <i>barā</i>	بڑا	Unsanitary	= <i>maīlā</i>	مبلا
Shallow	= <i>uthlā</i>	آٹھلا	Unserviceable	{ <i>nikammā, raddī</i>	نکما - ردی
Sharp	= <i>tēz</i>	تیز	Unskilled	= <i>anārī</i>	انازی
Simple	= <i>sādah</i>	سادہ	Unusual	{ <i>ghair m'amūlī</i>	غیر معمولی
Simultaneous	{ <i>ek sāth kā</i>	ایک ساتھ کا	Verbal	= <i>zabānī</i>	زبانی
Slow	= <i>dhīmā</i>	دھیمّا	Voluntary	= <i>khūshī sē</i>	خوشی سے
Smart	= <i>phurtilā</i>	پھرتیلا	Wilfully	{ <i>jān bājī kar</i>	جان بوجھ کر
			Zigzag	{ <i>mor tor kā or torhā</i>	مور توڑ کا یا تیرھا

8. Court Words.

Blame	= <i>ilzām</i>	الزام	Crime	= <i>jurm</i>	جرم
Bribe	= <i>rishwat</i>	رشوت	Criminal	= <i>mājrim</i>	مجرم
Court	= <i>'adālat</i>	عدالت	Criticism	{ <i>maqta chinī</i>	نقطہ چینی
Court martial	{ <i>faujī 'adālat</i>	فوجی عدالت	Custom	= <i>dastūr</i>	دستور
Confinement	{ <i>nazar bandī</i>	نظر بندی	Dacoit	= <i>dākū</i>	ڈاکو
Confinement to lines	{ <i>luin quid</i>	لین قید	Dacoity	= <i>dākā</i>	ڈاکہ
Convict	= <i>quidī</i>	قیدی	Decision	= <i>faisalā</i>	فیصلہ
			Defect	= <i>nugs</i>	نقص
			Discretion	= <i>marzī</i>	مروضی

District	= <i>sīlā</i>	ضلع	Murder	= <i>khūn qatl</i>	خون قتل
Disturbance	= <i>fisād</i>	فساد	Murderer	= <i>khūnī</i>	خونی
Empire	{ <i>saltanat or rāj</i>	سلطنت راج	Mutineer	= <i>bāghī</i>	باغی
Evidence	= <i>garāhi</i>	گواہی	Mutiny	= <i>ghadar</i>	عذر
Eye-witness	{ <i>chashm did garāh</i>	چشم دید گواہ	Neglect	= <i>ghaflat</i>	غفلت
Fine	= <i>jurmānā</i>	جرمانہ	Oath	= <i>qasam (f)</i>	قسم
Finding	= <i>faislā</i>	فیصلہ	Objection	= <i>'uzr</i>	عذر
Fault	= <i>qasr</i>	تقصیر	Offence	= <i>jurm</i>	جرم
Favour	= <i>mīharbānī</i>	مہربانی	Opinion	= <i>rās (f)</i>	راہ
Guilt	= <i>qasr</i>	تقصیر	Partiality	= <i>tarafdārī</i>	طرف داری
Guilty	= <i>mujrim</i>	مجرم	Perjury	{ <i>jhūfī qasam</i>	جہرئی قسم
Imprisonment	= <i>qaid (f)</i>	قید	Permission	= <i>ijāzat</i>	اجازت
—simple	{ <i>qaid mahaz</i>	قید محض	Petition	= <i>'arzī</i>	عرضی
—solitary	{ <i>qaid tanhāi</i>	قید تنہائی	Proof	= <i>sabūt (m)</i>	ثبوت
—hard	{ <i>qaid saḥt</i>	قید سخت	Protest	= <i>'uzar</i>	عذر
Indian Penal Code	{ <i>'azirāt-i-hind</i>	تعزیرات ہند	Provocation	= <i>chhēr (f)</i>	چھڑ
Injustice	= <i>bē insāfī</i>	بے انصافی	Punishment	= <i>sazā (f)</i>	سزا
Inquest	= <i>tahqīqāt</i>	تہقیقات	Punishment (corporal)	{ <i>sazā-i-jismānī</i>	سزا جسمانی
Insubordination	{ <i>'adūl hukamī</i>	ادول حکمی	Rebel	= <i>bāghī</i>	باغی
Insurgent	= <i>bāghī</i>	باغی	Riot	= <i>fisād</i>	فساد
Intrigue	= <i>sāzish</i>	سازش	Report	= <i>riport</i>	ریپورٹ
Jurisdiction	= <i>ikhṭiyār</i>	اختیار	Report (confidential)	{ <i>khūfiyā riport</i>	خفیہ رپورٹ
Justice	= <i>insāf</i>	انصاف	Revolt	= <i>baghāwat</i>	بغاوت
Law	= <i>qānūn</i>	قانون	Secret	{ <i>bhēd or rāz</i>	بہد یا راز
—(Hindus)	{ <i>dharam shāstar</i>	دھرم شاستر	Sentence	= <i>hukam</i>	حکم
—(moham.)	= <i>shar'a (f)</i>	شروع	Statement	= <i>izhār</i>	اعلہار
Malice	= <i>dushmanī</i>	دشمنی	Suicide	= <i>khud kushī</i>	خود کشی
Misbehaviour	{ <i>bad chālī</i>	بد چلی	Traitor	{ <i>namak harām</i>	نمک حرام
			Transportation	{ <i>jalā watamī</i>	جلا وطنی
			Trial	= <i>pēshī</i>	پیشی
			Verification	= <i>tasdiq (f)</i>	تصدیق

9. Pay.

Accounts	= <i>hisāb</i>	حساب	Arrears of pay	{ <i>richhṭī talab</i>	پچھلی طلب
Advance of pay	{ <i>pēshgi talab</i>	پیشگی طلب	Average	= <i>avsat</i>	اوسط
Allowance	= <i>bhattā</i>	بہتہ	Behaviour (conduct, character)	{ <i>chāl chalan</i>	چال چلن
Applicant (candidate)	{ <i>umidwār</i>	امیدوار			

Compensation	} <i>mu'aawazī</i> معاوضہ	List	= <i>fahrist</i> فهرست
Compensation (for dearness)	} <i>mahangāi</i> مہنگائی	Muster	= <i>hāzrī</i> حاضری
Claim	= <i>d'awa</i> دعویٰ	Muster roll	= <i>muster roll</i> مسٹر رول
Deficiency	= <i>kamī</i> کمی	Pay	{ <i>talab</i> or <i>tankehwaāh</i> طلب یا تنخواہ
Deposit	= <i>amānat</i> امانت	Reward	= <i>in'aām</i> انعام
Estimate	= <i>aṇḍāza</i> اندازہ	Receipt	= <i>rasīd</i> (f) رسید
Economy	= <i>kifāyat</i> کفایت	Regulation	{ <i>qā'idā</i> قاعدہ
Examination	= <i>imtihān</i> امتحان	Rule	{ <i>qā'idā</i> قاعدہ
Examination (medical)	{ <i>ḍaktrī imtihān</i> ڈاکٹری امتحان	Responsibility	{ <i>zimmēdarī</i> ذمہ داری
Furlough	= <i>razā</i> (f) رضا	Sanction	= <i>manzūrī</i> منظور
Gratuity	= <i>in'aām</i> انعام	Seal	= <i>muhār</i> (f) مهر
Item	= <i>raqam</i> (f) رقم	Signature	= <i>dashtkhāt</i> دستخط
Instalment	= <i>qist</i> قسط	Stoppages of pay	{ <i>talab kā kāfnā</i> طلب کا کٹنا
Leave	{ <i>rukhsāt</i> or <i>chhuṭṭī</i> رخصت یا چھٹی	Thumb mark	{ <i>aṅgūṭhē kā nishān</i> انگوٹھ کا نشان
		Witness	= <i>gawāh</i> گواہ

10. Travelling.

Anchor (to raise)	{ <i>langar usthānā</i> لنگر اُٹھانا	Carriage or waggon	{ <i>gārī</i> گاڑی
Anchor lay	{ <i>langar-ḍālānā</i> لنگر ڈالنا	Country	= <i>mulk</i> ملک
Ascend to	= <i>charḥnā</i> چڑھنا	—close	= <i>tang mulk</i> تنگ ملک
Ascent	= <i>charḥāi</i> چڑھائی	—open	= <i>khulā-mulk</i> کھلا ملک
Baggage or Luggage	{ <i>asbāb</i> اسباب	—sandy	= <i>rītālā-mulk</i> ریتلا ملک
Bay	= <i>khāri</i> کھاری	Current	= <i>lahar</i> (f) لہر
Boat	= <i>kishti</i> کشتی	Defile	= <i>dara</i> درہ
Bottom	= <i>tah</i> (f) تہ	Descend (to)	= <i>utarnā</i> اُترنا
Bridge	= <i>pul</i> پل	Descent	= <i>utarāi</i> اُترائی
Brook	= <i>nālā</i> نالہ	Desert	= <i>sahrā</i> صحرا
Camp	= <i>ḡarāv</i> گراؤ	Ditch	= <i>khāi</i> کھائی
Canal	= <i>nahar</i> (f) نہر	Drain	= <i>nālī</i> نالی
Canvas	= <i>tāl</i> ٹاٹ	Drive (to)	= <i>hāṇknā</i> ہانکنا
Cape	= <i>rās</i> (f) راس	Drown (to)	= <i>ḍūtnā</i> ڈوبنا
Capital	= <i>pāyā-takht</i> پایہ تخت	East	{ <i>mushriq</i> or <i>pūrab</i> مشرق یا پورب
Cart	= <i>gārī</i> گاڑی	Ekka	= <i>yakkā</i> یکہ
—bullock	= <i>baṭī-gārī</i> بیل گاڑی	Embark (to)	{ <i>jahāz par sawār-honā</i> جہاز پر سوار ہونا
—driver	= <i>gārī-bān</i> گاڑی بان		
—mule	{ <i>khachchar-gārī</i> خچر گاڑی		

Ferry	= <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ
Fleet	= <i>bērā</i>	بیرا
Flood	= <i>sailāh</i>	سیلاب
Flow (to)	= <i>bahnā</i>	بہنا
Footfall	= <i>āhaṭ</i>	آہٹ
Foot path	= <i>pag-dandī</i>	پگڈنڈی
Ford	= <i>pāyāl</i>	پایاب
Forest	= <i>jāngal</i>	جنگل
Fountain	{ <i>fawwārā or chash-</i> <i>ma</i>	فوارا یا چشمہ
Ground	= <i>zamīn</i> (f)	زمین
—barren	{ <i>bañjjar zamīn</i>	بندر زمین
—broken	{ <i>tufī phūfi zamīn</i>	ٹوٹی پھوٹی زمین
—camping	= <i>parāo</i>	پڑاؤ
—undulating	{ <i>ūnchī nīchī zamīn</i>	اُرنچی نیچی زمین
Gulf	= <i>khalīj</i> (f)	خلیج
Halt (to)	{ <i>maqām karnā</i>	مقام کرنا
Halting place	{ <i>parāo</i>	پڑاؤ
Hill	= <i>pahārī</i>	پہاڑی
Island	{ <i>tāpū or jazīrā</i>	ٹاپو یا جزیرہ
Journey	= <i>safar</i>	سفر
Lake	= <i>jheel</i> (f)	جھیل
Landing place	{ <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ
Load	= <i>bojh</i>	بوجھ
Load (to)	= <i>lādnā</i>	لادنا
Lowland	= <i>nīshēh</i>	نشیب
March	= <i>kūch</i>	کوچ
—forced	{ <i>sakht kūch</i>	سخت کوچ
Marsh	= <i>daldal</i> (f)	دلدل
Mile	= <i>mīl</i>	میل
Mountain	= <i>pahār</i>	پہاڑ
Mud	= <i>kīchar</i> (f)	کیچر
North	{ <i>shīmāl or uttar</i>	شمال یا اُتر

Oar	= <i>chappā</i>	چپر
Pass	= <i>dara</i>	درہ
Passenger	= <i>muṣāfir</i>	مسافر
Peg	= <i>mēkh</i> (f)	مبغ
Plain	= <i>maidān</i>	میدان
Pole	= <i>ballī</i>	بلی
Port	= <i>bandar</i>	بندر
Rain	= <i>bārīsh</i>	بارش
Ride (to)	{ <i>sawārī karnā</i>	سواری کرنا
River	= <i>daryā</i>	دریا
River mouth	= <i>dahānā</i>	دھانہ
Road	= <i>sarak</i> (f)	سڑی
Robber	= <i>chor</i>	چور
Rock	= <i>chaṭān</i> (f)	چٹان
Rope	= <i>rassā</i>	رسا
Sail (to set)	{ <i>rauṇānā honā</i>	روانہ ہونا
Sailor	= <i>mallāh</i>	ملاح
Sand	= <i>rēt</i>	ریت
Sea (ocean)	= <i>samundar</i>	سمندر
Season	= <i>mausim</i>	موسم
Shade	= <i>sāyā</i>	سایہ
Shelter	= <i>panāh</i> (f)	پناہ
Ship	= <i>jahāz</i>	جہاز
Slope	= <i>dhalwān</i>	ڈھلوان
South	{ <i>janūb or dalkhan</i>	جنوب یا دکھن
Spring	= <i>chashmā</i>	چشمہ
Set out (to)	{ <i>rauṇānā honā</i>	روانہ ہونا
Start	{	
Stage	= <i>parāo</i>	پڑاؤ
Steamer	= <i>aganboṭ</i>	اگنبرٹ
Storm	= <i>tūfān</i>	طوفان
Strait	= <i>ābnāe</i>	آبنائے
Stream	= <i>naddī</i>	نہی
Stream down	{ <i>bahāo kī taraf</i>	بھاؤ کی طرف
Stream up	{ <i>charhāo kī taraf</i>	چوہاؤ کی طرف
Summit	= <i>choṭī</i>	چوٹی
Sun	= <i>sūraj</i>	سورج

Sunshine	= <i>dhip</i> (f)	دھوپ	Travel (to)	= <i>safar-karnā</i>	سفر کرنا
Swim (to)	= <i>tainā</i>	تیرنا	Traveller	= <i>masāfir</i>	مسافر
Tent	= <i>ḡarā</i>	ڈیرہ	Tum Tum?	= <i>tum tum</i> (f)	ٹم ٹم
— wall	= <i>qanāt</i>	قنات	Valley	= <i>ghāṭi</i>	گھاٹی
— to pitch	= <i>ḡarā lagānā</i>	ڈیرہ لگانا	Watercourse	= <i>nālā</i>	نالہ
— to strike	{ <i>ḡarā girānā</i>	ڈیرہ گرانہ	Wave	= <i>lahar</i> (f)	لہر
Transport	{ <i>bār bardārī</i>	بار برداری	West	{ <i>maghrīb</i> or <i>pachchham</i>	مغرب یا پچھم

11. Stable Words.

Axle	= <i>dhurā</i>	دھرا	Feed (to)	{ <i>dānū-khilānā</i>	دانہ کھلانا
Bandage	= <i>pattī</i>	پٹی	Foot	= <i>pāṇ</i>	پاؤں
Barley	= <i>jau</i>	جو	Gallop (to)	= <i>sar paṭ-jānā</i>	سر پٹ جانا
Bay	= <i>kumaūt</i>	کمیٹ	Girth	= <i>taṅg</i>	تنگ
Bedding	= <i>bichālī</i>	بیچالی	Gram	= <i>dānā</i>	دانہ
Bit	= <i>dahānā</i>	دھانہ	Grass	= <i>ghās</i> (f)	گھاس
Bite (to)	= <i>kāṭnā</i>	کاٹنا	Grass cutter	= <i>ghasiyārā</i>	گھسیارہ
Black	= <i>mushkī</i>	مشکی	Grazo (to)	= <i>charnā</i>	چرنا
Blanket	= <i>kammāl</i>	کمل	Grey	= <i>sabzā</i>	سبزہ
Bran	= <i>chakar</i>	چوکر	Groom	= <i>sāis</i>	سائیس
Bridle	= <i>lagām</i>	لگام	Groom (to)	{ <i>mālīsh-karnā</i>	مالیش کرنا
Breast	= <i>sinu</i>	سینہ	Hard mouthed	= <i>munḥ-zor</i>	منہ زور
Breast plate	= <i>sinu band</i>	سینہ بند	Harness	= <i>sāz</i>	ساز
Brush	= <i>burush</i>	برش	Hay	{ <i>sukhi-ghās</i>	سرکھی گھاس
Brush to	{ <i>burush karnā</i>	برش کرنا	Head collar	= <i>nukta</i>	نکتہ
Buckle	= <i>baksū</i>	بکسوا	Head stall	= <i>sar doālī</i>	سر درالی
Bucket	= <i>bālṭī</i>	بالٹی	Head rope	= <i>agāṛī</i>	اگاری
Chestnut	= <i>surang</i>	سرنگ	Heel rope	= <i>pichhārī</i>	پچھاری
Colt	= <i>bachhērā</i>	بچھیرا	Hole (stirrup)	= <i>ghar</i>	گھر
Comb (curry)	= <i>khararā</i>	کھیرا	Hood	= <i>ṭap</i>	ٹپ
Comb (to)	{ <i>khararā karnā</i>	کھیرا کرنا	Hoof	= <i>sum</i>	سم
Crush (to)	= <i>dalnā</i>	دلنا	Horse (cast)	{ <i>mlāmi-ghorā</i>	نیلामी گھوڑا
Crupper	= <i>dumchī</i>	دُمچی	Kick	= <i>dulatti</i>	دلتی
Cushion	= <i>gaddī</i>	گدی	Kick (to)	{ <i>dulatti mārṇā</i>	دلتی مارنا
Dry	= <i>sūkhā</i>	سوکھا	Lead (to)	= <i>lē-chalnā</i>	لے چلنا
Dry (to)	= <i>sukhānā</i>	سکھانا	Leg	= <i>ṭāṅg</i> (f)	ٹانگ
Dun	= <i>samanḍ</i>	سمند			
Dung	= <i>līd</i> (f)	لید			
Feed	= <i>dānā</i>	دانہ			

Lengthen (to)	= <i>barhānā</i>	برهان	Snaffle	= <i>qazai</i>	قزی
Linseed	= <i>alsi</i>	السی	Soak (to)	= <i>bhigonā</i>	بھگونا
Loose	= <i>dhilā</i>	ڈھلا	Soap	= <i>sābun</i>	صابن
Lunge (to)	{ <i>chakkar-lagānā</i>	چکر لگانا	Sore-back (to get)	{ <i>pīth-lagnā</i>	پیٹھ لگنا
Mane	= <i>ayāl</i>	ایال			
Mallet	= <i>mogrā</i>	موگرا	Stall	= <i>thām</i>	تھان
Martingale	= <i>zēr-band</i>	زیر بند	Stable	= <i>astabāl</i>	اصطبل
Oat	= <i>jai</i>	جئی	Stirrup	= <i>rikāb</i>	رکاب
Pat (to)	= <i>thapaknā</i>	تھپکانا	Strap	= <i>tasnū</i>	تسمہ
Peg	= <i>mākh</i> (f)	مکھ	Stumble (to)	{ <i>thokar khānā</i>	تھوکر کھانا
Piebald	= <i>ablaq</i>	ابلاقی			
Quiet	= <i>gharīb</i>	غریب			
Race or Race course	{ <i>ghur-daur</i> (f)	گھوڑ درز	Syce	= <i>sā's</i>	سائیس
Rein	= <i>bāg dor</i> (f)	ناک درز	Tail	= <i>dam</i> (f)	دم
Rub (to)	= <i>mulnā</i>	ملنا	Take off (to)	= <i>utār nā</i>	اُتارنا
Rug	= <i>jhāl</i> (f)	جھول	Tighten (to)	= <i>lasnā</i>	کسنا
Saddle	= <i>sin</i>	زین	Throat	= <i>galā</i>	گلا
Saddle padding	{ <i>gaddi</i>	گدی	Throat lash	= <i>gal'fānī</i>	گلاننی
Saddle put on (to)	{ <i>zin-lagānā</i>	زین لگانا	Trace (of a harness)	{ <i>jot</i>	جوت
Shaft	= <i>bam</i>	بم	Trot (to)	= <i>dulkī-jānā</i>	دلکی جانا
Shoe	= <i>n'al</i>	نعل	Urine	= <i>pēshāb</i>	پیشاب
Shoe (to)	{ <i>n'al bāndhnā</i>	نعل باندھنا	Vicious	= <i>sharir</i>	شریر
Shorten (to)	{ <i>chhoṭā-karnā</i>	چھوٹا کرنا	Walk (to)	{ <i>qadām qadām jānā</i>	قدم قدم جانا
			Water (to)	= <i>pānī-pilānā</i>	پانی پلانا
			Water trough	= <i>charahī</i>	چروہی
			Wheel	= <i>pahiyā</i>	پہیہ
			Whip	= <i>chāruk</i>	چابک
Shy (to)	= <i>bharāknā</i>	بھڑکانا	Wipe (to)	= <i>ponchhnā</i>	پونچھنا

12. Parts of the body.

Ankle	= <i>akhnā</i>	انگڑھ	Body	= <i>badan</i>	بدن
Arm	= <i>bāzū</i>	بازو	Bone	= <i>haddī</i>	ھڈی
Armpit	= <i>baghal</i>	بغل	Cheek	= <i>gāl</i> (f)	گال
Back	= <i>pīth</i> (f)	پیٹھ	Chest	= <i>chhātī</i>	چھاتی
Beard	= <i>dārhī</i>	داڑھی	Ear	= <i>kān</i>	کان
Belly	= <i>pēt</i>	پےٹ	Elbow	= <i>kukhī</i>	کھنی

Eye	= <i>āṇkh</i> (f)	آنکھ	Nails	= <i>nākhun</i>	ناخن
Finger	= <i>ungali</i>	اُنکلی	Neck	= <i>gardan</i> (f)	گردن
Flesh	= <i>goṣht</i> (m)	گوشت	Nose	= <i>nāk</i> (f)	ناک
Foot	= <i>pāon</i>	پاؤن	Palm	= <i>hathēli</i>	هتھیلی
Fore head	= <i>māthā</i>	مانٹھا	Side	= <i>pahlā</i>	پہلو
Hair	= <i>bāl</i>	بال	Skin	= <i>khāl</i> (f)	کھال
Hand	= <i>hāth</i>	ھاتھ	Shoulder	= <i>kanēhā</i>	کدھا
Head	= <i>sir</i>	سر	Stomach	= <i>pēt</i>	پیٹ
Heart	= <i>dil</i>	دل	Thigh	= <i>rān</i>	ران
Heal	= <i>erī</i>	ایڑی	Throat	= <i>galā</i>	گلا
Joint	= <i>joṛ</i>	جور	Tongue	= <i>jībḥ</i> (f)	جیبھہ
Knee	= <i>zānū</i>	زانو	Tooth	= <i>dānt</i>	دانت
Leg	= <i>ṭāng</i> (f)	ٹانگ	Toe	{ <i>pāon kī ungali</i> پاؤن کی اُنکلی	
Limb	= <i>'azū</i>	عضو			
Lip	= <i>honṭ</i>	ھونٹ	Thumb	= <i>angūṭhā</i>	انگوٹھا
Liver	= <i>kalējā</i>	کلیجہ	Toes	= <i>panjā</i>	پدچا
Moustache	= <i>mūnchh</i>	مونچھ	Wrist	= <i>kalāi</i>	کلائی
Mouth	= <i>mūnh</i>	مدھہ			

13. Medical Words.

Ague	= <i>jārā</i>	جارا	Fever (to get)	{ <i>bukhār charhnā</i> بھگار چرھنا	
Appetite	= <i>bhūk</i> (f)	بھوک	Fever (to leave)	{ <i>bukhār utārnā</i> بھگار اُترنا	
Asthma	= <i>damā</i>	دمہ	Foment (to)	= <i>sēknā</i>	سیکنا
Blind	= <i>andhā</i>	اندھا	Fracture (to)	= <i>ṭūṭnā</i>	ٹوٹنا
Blood	= <i>khūn</i>	خون	Giddy (to feel)	{ <i>chakkar ānā</i> چکر آنا	
Boil	= <i>phorā</i>	پھوڑا	Gulp (of water)	{ <i>ghūnṭ</i> گھونٹ	
Breath	= <i>sāns</i>	سانس	Heal (to)	{ <i>achchhā honā</i> اچھا ہونا	
Breathe (to)	= <i>sāns lenā</i>	سانس لینا	Hospital	= <i>shifā khānā</i>	شفا خانہ
Chew (to)	= <i>chabānā</i>	چبانا	Hurt	= <i>choṭ</i>	چوٹ
Cholera	= <i>hāizā</i>	ھیزہ	Hurt (to)	= <i>choṭ lagnā</i>	چوٹ لگنا
Complaint	{ <i>bimārī, shikāyat</i> بیماری-شکایت		Indigestion	= <i>bad hazmī</i>	بد هضمی
Conscious	= <i>hosh mēn</i>	ھوش میں	Inoculation	= <i>ṭika</i>	ٹیکہ
Constipation	= <i>qabzī</i>	قبضی	Itch	= <i>khujli</i>	کھجلی
Cough	= <i>khānsī</i>	کھانسی	Lancet	= <i>naṣhtar</i>	نشتار
Cough (to)	= <i>khānsenā</i>	کھانسنہ	Liver	{ <i>kalējā or jigar</i> کلیجہ یا جگر	
Cotton wool	= <i>rūi</i>	روئی			
Deaf	= <i>bahrā</i>	بھرا			
Diarrhoea	= <i>dast</i>	دست			
Digestion	= <i>hāzmā</i>	ھاضمہ			
Dysentary	= <i>pēchiah</i>	پیچیش			
Fever	= <i>bukhār</i>	بھگار			

Liver complaint	{ <i>jigar kī bimārī</i> جگر کی بیماری	Spittle	= <i>thalak</i>	نہری
Medicine	= <i>daruī</i>	Spleen	= <i>billi</i>	تلی
Mortuary	= <i>lāsh khānā</i>	Sprain	= <i>moch (f)</i>	مرچ
Ointment	= <i>marham</i>	Sore-eyes (to get)	{ <i>ānkh dukhna</i> آنکھ دکھنا	
Operation	= <i>chir phār</i>	Swallow (to)	= <i>nigalnā</i>	نکلتا
Operate (to)	{ <i>chir phār karnā</i> چیر پہاز کرنا	Swell (to)	= <i>sūgnā</i>	سوجنا
Pain	= <i>dard</i>	Swelling	= <i>soj (f)</i>	سج
Patient	= <i>bimār</i>	Sulphur	= <i>gaṇḍhak</i>	گندھک
Pill	= <i>goli</i>	Syringe (to)	{ <i>piehkarī karnā</i> پچکاری کرنا	
Pimple	= <i>phunsi</i>	Tooth-ache	{ <i>dānt kā dard</i> دانت کا درد	
Poison	= <i>zahar</i>	Unconscious	= <i>bē hośh</i>	بے ہوش
Purgative	= <i>jullāb</i>	Vaccination	= <i>fikā</i>	فیکہ
Pulse	= <i>nabz (f)</i>	Vomit	= <i>qas</i>	قے
Pulse to feel	{ <i>nabz dekhna</i> نبض دیکھنا	Vomit (to)	= <i>qas karnā</i>	قے کرنا
Shivering	= <i>kapkapī</i>	Wound	= <i>zakhm</i>	زخم
Sick	= <i>bimār</i>	Wounded	= <i>zakhmī</i>	زخمی
Sleep	= <i>nīnd (f)</i>	Zinc	= <i>jaat</i>	جست

14. Animals, Birds, etc.

Animal	= <i>jānwar</i>	Hare	= <i>ghargosh</i>	خرگوش
Beer	= <i>bhālū</i>	Insect	= <i>kīṛā</i>	کیڑا
Bird	= <i>parind</i>	Jackal	= <i>gīdar</i>	گیدڑ
Buffalow	= <i>bhaiṅs</i>	Kite	= <i>chil</i>	چیل
Bug	= <i>khaṭmal</i>	Leach	= <i>jonk</i>	جونک
Butterfly	= <i>tilri</i>	Leopard	= <i>chitā</i>	چیتا
Camel	= <i>unṭ</i>	Lion	= <i>shēr</i>	شیر
Cat	= <i>billi</i>	Lizard	= <i>chhipkalī</i>	چھپکلی
Cattle	= <i>mawēshi</i>	Locust	= <i>fidḍī</i>	فڈی
Cock	= <i>murghā</i>	Mosquito	= <i>machchhar</i>	مچھر
Crow	= <i>karwā</i>	Mongoose	= <i>nalā</i>	نیرلہ
Dog	= <i>kuttā</i>	Monkey	= <i>bandar</i>	بندر
Donkey	= <i>gadhā</i>	Mouse	= <i>chūhiyā (f)</i>	چوہیا
Elephant	= <i>hāthī (m)</i>	Mule	= <i>khachchar (f)</i>	خچر
Fish	= <i>machhli</i>	Parrot	= <i>totā</i>	طوطا
Flea	= <i>piśū</i>	Peacock	= <i>mor</i>	مور
Fly	= <i>makkhī</i>	Partridge	= <i>titar</i>	تیتھر
Frog	= <i>mēṇḍak</i>	Pigeon	= <i>kabutar</i>	کبوتر
Fox	= <i>lūmpī</i>	Rat	= <i>chūhā</i>	چوہا
Goat	= <i>bakrā</i>	Scorpion	= <i>bichchhū</i>	بچھر

Sheep	= <i>bhēri</i>	بیزی	Vulture	= <i>gidh</i>	گده
Snake	= <i>sānp</i>	سانپ	Worm	= <i>kiṛā</i>	کیرا
Sparrow	= <i>chīriyā</i>	چریا	Wolf	= <i>bheriyā</i>	بھریا
Turkey	= <i>perū</i>	پدر			

15. Professions.

Baker	= <i>nānbāi</i>	ناندائی	Grocer	= <i>sau'lgar</i>	سوداگر
Banker	= <i>sarrāf</i>	صراف	Hawker	= <i>phēri-wālā</i>	پھیری والہ
Barber	= <i>nā</i>	نالی	Hunter	= <i>shikāri</i>	شکاری
Bearer	= <i>baiṛa</i>	بیرا	Jeweller	= <i>jausharī</i>	چوہری
Blacksmith	= <i>lohār</i>	لوہار	Judge	= <i>munsif</i>	منصف
Butcher	= <i>qasāb</i>	قصاب	Laundryman	} <i>dhobī</i>	دھوبی
Butler	= <i>hūn-sāmān</i>	حاشامہ	(washerman)		
Carpenter	= <i>mistri</i>	مستری	Labourer	= <i>mazdūr</i>	مزدور
Confectioner	= <i>halwāi</i>	حلوائی	Manager	= <i>muntazim</i>	منتظم
Cook	= <i>bāwarchi</i>	بازرچی	Mason	= <i>rāj</i>	راج
Druggist	= <i>dawā-farosh</i>	دوا فروش	Merchant	= <i>saudāgar</i>	سوداگر
Farrier	= <i>n'al-band</i>	نعلبند	Pedlar	= <i>ba zāz</i>	بازا
Fisherman	= <i>machhwā</i>	مچھوا	Physician	= <i>hakim</i>	حکیم
Fruit-seller	{ <i>mīnā farosh</i>	مینہ فروش	Porter	= <i>coolie</i>	فلی
Gold Smith	= <i>sunār</i>	سناور	Profession	= <i>pīshā</i>	پیشہ
			Trade	= <i>tiājārat</i>	تجارت

16. Fruits, etc.

Apple	= <i>si b</i>	سیب	Lemon	= <i>nimū</i>	نیمو
Apricot	= <i>zard ārū</i>	زرد آرز	Mango	= <i>ām</i>	آم
Bark	= <i>chhalkā</i>	چھلکا	Melon	= <i>khurbūzah</i>	خربزہ
Branch	= <i>shākh (f)</i>	شاخ	Orange	= <i>nārangi</i>	نارنگی
Bud	= <i>kalī</i>	کلی	Onion	= <i>piyāz</i>	پیاز
Bush	= <i>ghārī</i>	جھازی	Pear	= <i>nāshpātī</i>	ناشپانی
Cocoanut	= <i>nāriyal</i>	ناریل	Peaches	= <i>ārū</i>	آرز
Dates	= <i>khajūr (f)</i>	کھجور	Peas	= <i>mattar</i>	مٹر
Field	= <i>khet (m)</i>	کھیت	Pomegranate	= <i>anār</i>	انار
Flower	= <i>phul</i>	پھول	potato	= <i>ālū</i>	آلڑ
Fruit	= <i>phal</i>	پھل	Radish	= <i>mūlī</i>	مولی
Fig	= <i>anjūr (f)</i>	انجور	Root	= <i>jar</i>	جز
Grapes	= <i>anjār</i>	انگور	Seed	= <i>bīj</i>	بیج
Garlic	= <i>lūsan</i>	لہسن	Thorn	= <i>kāñā</i>	کانٹا
Garden	= <i>bāgh (h)</i>	باغچہ	Turnip	= <i>shalgam (f)</i>	شلجم
Juice	= <i>ras</i>	رس	Tomato	= <i>tamātār</i>	ٹماٹر
Kernel	= <i>gūdā</i>	گودا	Walnut	= <i>akhrot</i>	اخروت
Leaf	= <i>pattā</i>	پتہ			

SECTION 2.

MILITARY PHRASES.

1. Hurry up = *jaldi karo.*
2. Take care = *khabardār.*
3. Don't forget = *bhūlo mat.*
4. Keep quiet = *chup raho.*
5. Don't make a noise = *shor mat karo.*
6. Don't be afraid = *darō mat.**
7. Don't be confused = *ghabrāo nah.**
8. Don't laugh = *hanso mat.*
9. Speak distinctly = *sāf sāf bolo.*
10. Get out of the way = *rāsta chhoro or rāstē se hat jāo.*
11. Stand up and salute = *kharē holkar salām karo.*
12. Take off those clothes = *wuh kaprē utāro.*
13. Put on this uniform = *yih wardi pahino.*
14. Put on this sword = *yih talwār lāgāo or bāndho.*
15. Hold the horse = *ghorā thāmo.*
16. Call him here = *usko yahān bulāo.*
17. What is the time now ? = *ab kyā waqt hai or ab kitnē bajē hai?*
18. Has the midday gun fired ? = *kyā bārah bajē ki top chal chuki ?*
- Have you heard the report of the gun ? = *ap ne top suni ?*
19. Do you want employment ? = *naukari karoge ?*
20. What is your age ? = *tumhārī umr kyā hai ?*
21. What is your caste ? = *tumhārī zāt kyā hai ?*
22. What tribe do you belong to ? = *tum kis qaum kē ho ?*
23. To which district and tahsil do you belong ? = *tum kis zillē yā tahsil kē ho ?*
24. Are you willing to serve ? = *naukari karnē par rāzi ho ?*
25. Will you go over seas ? = *samandar pār jāogē ?*
26. What is your name ? = *tumhārā nām kyā hai ?*
27. Where is your home ? = *tumhārā watan kahān hai ?*
28. What is the name of your village ? = *tumhārē gāon kā nām kyā hai ?*
29. What sort of people live in your village ? = *tumhārē gāon mēn kis qisam kē log rahētē hai ?*
30. Who is the headman ? = *lambardār kaun hai ?*

* Negative when put after the verb, is more emphatic.

31. What is the population of=*tumhārē gāon kī ābādī kyā hai?*
your village?
32. Is there any police station=*wahān koī thānā hai?*
there?
33. Are you married or a bachelor=*tumhārī shādī ho chukī yā kaṁcārē*
lor?
ho?
34. Have you any children? =*bāl bachchē haiṅ?*
35. Have you any relation in the=*fauj mēṅ tumhārā koī rishtedār*
army?
hai?
36. Are your parents alive? =*tumhārē māṅ bāp zīndā haiṅ?*
37. Have you any land? =*tumhārē pās zamīn hai?*
38. What sort of land is that? =*wuh zamīn kaisī hai?*
39. Is it irrigated or unirrigated? =*ālī hai yā bārānī.*
40. This land depends on rain fall =*yih zamīn bārānī hai.*
41. These recruits are up to the=*yih rangrūt thīk haiṅ our pās*
standard and approved
hogayē?
42. Are you a soldier or a non-*tum sipāhī ho yā uhdēdār?*
commissioned officer?
43. What is your rank? =*tumhārā darjā kyā hai?*
44. What regiment do you belong=*tum kis palṭan mēṅ ho?*
to?
45. What company are you in? =*tum kis kampanī mēṅ ho?*
46. What is the number of your=*tumhārī palṭan kā number kyā*
regiment?
hai?
47. Who commands your com=*tumhārī kampanī kī kamān kaun*
pany?
kartā hai?
48. Where did you enlist? =*tum kahān bhartī huē?*
49. Is recruiting very brisk here? =*yahān rangrūt bahut bhartī hotē*
haiṅ?
50. Do you like service? =*tum ko naukārī pasand hai?*
51. How long have you served? =*tumhārī kitnī mulāzimat hai?*
52. Have you got a badge? =*tumhārē pās billā hai?*
53. Have you ever been on active=*kabhī lām par gayē ho?*
service?
54. Have you got any medal or=*tumhārē pās tamghā yā karī hai?*
clasps?
55. Have you ever been overseas =*kabhī samandar pār gayē ho?*
56. Were you sick on the voyage? =*safar mēṅ bimār to nahīn huē?*
I hope not
57. Which ship did you sail by? =*kis jahāz sē gayē thē?*
58. Was the sea calm or rough? =*samandar sāf thā yā tāfān mēṅ?*

59. What was the weather like ? = *mausim kaisā thā ?*
60. How many battles did you take part in ? = *tum kitnī larāiyon mēn shāmil hue ?*
61. What was the battle like in france ? = *france kī larāi kaisī thī ?*
62. Did you see the trench-warfare ? = *tum nē morchon kī larāi dekhī ?*
63. How long did you stay in france ? = *france mēn kitnē dīn thairē ?*
64. Did the climate suit you ? = *āb-o-hawā muāfiq thī ?*
65. What do you think of the french ? = *fransisiyon kī lābat āpkī kyā rā hai ?*
66. Did they receive you kindly ? = *wuh (āpsē) miharbānī sē pēsh atā thē ?*
67. Were you ever wounded or sick ? = *kābhī līmār yā zakhmī hue ?*
68. Were you wounded slightly or severely ? = *zakhm sakht lagā yā halkā ?*
69. Were you well attended to in hospital ? = *haspatāl mēn 'ilāj achchhā hūā ?*
70. How many of your native officers were killed in action ? = *larāi mēn kitnē sardār kām āyē ?*
71. How many were wounded ? = *kitnē zakhmī hue ?*
72. How many men were made prisoners. = *kitnē jawān pakṛē gayē ?*
73. How many were missing ? = *lā-patā kitnē thē ?*
74. Do you get any furlough ? = *tum ko chhutti bhī miltī hai ?*
75. What is your pay ? = *tumhārī talab kyā hai ?*
76. Are you paid weekly or monthly ? = *talab haftē-haftē miltī hai yā mahinē mahinē ?*
77. Can you live on this pay ? = *is tankhwāh mēn guzārā hojātī hai ?*
78. Do you get any allowance ? = *bhattā bhī miltā hai ?*
79. Do you get free rations and clothing ? = *rasad aur kaprā muft miltā hai ?*
80. Do you cook the food yourself ? = *khānā āp banātē ho ?*
81. When was this battalion raised ? = *yih battalīon kab khari kī gayī thī ?*
82. Where is the parade ground ? = *parēt kī maidān kahān hai ?*
83. Do you know your drill ? = *apnī drill jāntē ho.*
84. Who is the drill-instructor ? = *drill sikhānē wālā kaun hai ?*
85. What time does the regiment parade daily ? = *palṭan har roz kitnē bajē qawā'id kartī hai ?*

86. Is there no parade in the=shām ko koi parāṭ nahin hotī ?
evening ?
87. Do the recruits attend ? =rangrūṭ log shāmil hotē haiṅ ?
88. Order the men to parade in=jawānoṅ ko hukam sunādo kih kal
marching order tomorrow ? marching order mēṅ parāṭ hogā.
89. Recruits need not attend ? =rangrūṭon ko ānē ki zarūrat nahīn.
90. Is your annual musketry=tumhāri sālānā chānd , māri ho
course over ? chuki ?
91. Which company stood first ? =kaunsi kampani awwal rahi.
92. Are you a good shot ? =tum uchchhē nishānchē ho ?
93. Can you hit the mark ? =nishānā mār saktē ho ?
94. Load this gun and fire =yih baṇḍūg bharkar chālāo.
95. Take care not to break it ? =dekhnā toṛnā mat.
96. How far is the rifle range ? =chānd māri kitni dur hai ?
97. Is there any competition this=is sāl koi muqābalā hogā ?
year ?
98. Do you get any prize ? =koi in'aām milnā hai ?
99. Order a sufficient number of=kal kē wāste kāfi chānd banwāo.
targets for tomorrow ?
100. Do you know signalling ? =tum zhaṇḍi kā kām jānte ho ?
101. Have you passed the exami=imtihān pās kiyā hai ?
nation ?
102. How long did it take you to=kitnē din mēṅ sikhā ?
learn it.
103. Did you find it difficult or=mushkil m'alūm hūā yā āsān ?
easy ?
104. Is it three months' course ? =kyā yih tin mahinē ki sikhlāi hai ?
105. Do you use heliograph in pre=jhaṇḍi ki nisbat shishē se ziyādah
ference to flag ? kām lītē ho ?
106. Can you sound a bugle ? =bugle bajā saktē ho ?
107. Did you ever get a reward =kabhi koi in'aām milā ?
108. Were you ever punished ? =kabhi sazā mili ?
109. Have you ever been tried by a=kabhi court martial hūā.
court martial ?
(To be tried=pēsh honā)
110. Have you been in prison ? =kabhi qaid hūē ?
111. Can you read and write ? =likh parh saktē ho ?
112. Is he illiterate or educated ? =wuh anparh hai yā likhā parhā.
113. Is there a regimental school =lāin mēṅ polṭan kā school hai ?
in the lines ?
114. Who is the school master ? =school māster kaun hai ?

115. When will you get your pro.=*tumhārī tarraqqī kab hogī ?*
motion ?
116. Are you promoted in turns ? =*tarraqqī bārī bārī millī hai ?*
117. Can you swim ? =*tair-saktē ho ?*
118. Are you on duty to-day ? =*āj tumhārī naukārī hai ?*
119. Are you exempted from duty =*āj kal tum ko naukārī mu'af*
now-a-days ? *hai ?*
120. At what time do you issue =*rasad kitnē bajē hāntē ho ?*
rations ?
121. Have you received any definite =*tum ko sarhadd par jānē kē liyē*
orders to proceed to the fron- *pakkā hukam mil gayā hai ?*
tier ?
122. What regiment will you relieve =*kis palān kī badlī mēn jāogē ?*
there ?
123. Do you get any extra pay on =*lām par kuchh ziyādāh talab millī*
active service ? *hai ?*
124. Do you ever go out hunting ? =*kabhī shikār khīlnē jātē ho ?*
125. What sport can be had in this =*is gird o nūwāh mēn kyā shikār*
neighbour hood ? *mil saktā hai ?*
126. Are there plenty of black buck ? =*kālē hiran bahut hai ?*
127. No partridges or quails ? =*titar yā baṭer nahīn ?*
128. Are there any snipe, duck or =*chahē batakhēn yā rāj hans bhī*
geese ? *hai ?*
129. Can you buy shots in Bazar ? =*bāzār mēn chharrē mil saktē hai ?*
130. Where does this road lead to ? =*yih sarak kahān jātī hai ?*
131. How far is the camp from here ? =*parāo yahān sē kitnī dūr hai ?*
132. What is the road like ? =*sarak kaisī hai ?*
133. Is it metalled or unmetalled ? =*Pakkī hai yā kachhī ?*
134. How many stages is Amballa =*ambālla yahān sē kitnī dūr hai ?*
from here ?
135. Where is the camp contractor ? =*parāo kāñthēkēdār kaidhar hai ?*
136. Is there any river here ? =*yahān koi daryā hai ?*
137. Is there a ford or a ferry ? =*koī pāyāb yā ghāt hai ?*
138. How do the people cross this =*is daryā ko kis tarah 'abūr kartē*
river ? *hai ?*

139. Is there no bridge of boats ? = *kishtiyan kã koī pul nahīn ?*
140. The bridge was broken and = *pul fūl gayā aur pichhlē sāl barsāt*
washed away by the rains *mēn bah gayā ?*
last year.
141. There is another bridge two = *Dusrā pul do mil charhāo kī taraf*
miles further upstream *hai.*
142. Is there a village on this side = *naddī kē warī taraf kōī gāon hai ?*
of the stream ?
143. No ! but there is one on the = *nahīn, balkī parī taraf hai.*
far side
144. Show me the shortest way to = *us gāon ko nazdik kã rastā dikhāo*
that village.
145. Will that footpath lead stra = *wuh pagḍandī sidhi chalī jāegī ?*
ight on ?
146. Are there any nullahs to be = *kōī nālā 'abūr kārūnā hogā ?*
crossed ?
147. Can I get a pony on hire ? = *ṭaffū kīrāye par mil saktā hai ?*
148. What is the hire of the pony = *ṭaffū kī rozānā kīrāyā kyā hai ?*
per day ?
149. I will reward you for your = *main āphī madadkā in'āam dūngā*
help.
150. I am much obliged to you = *main āphī lārā ihsānmand hūn*
151. Send a party to select some = *ek ṭolī ko bhījō kīch parāokē liyē*
good place for the camp. *achhī jagah pasand karē.*
152. You must pitch the tents near = *ḍerō pānī ke nazdik aur agar hosakē*
water and if possible, under *to sāyē mēn lagānā chāhiyē.*
a shade.
153. You have also to arrange for = *tum ko rasad kã bandolast bhī*
the supply of rations. *karnā hogā.*
154. Where can I get good grass ? = *achhī ghās kahān mil saktī hai ?*
155. Is there any good grazing = *yahān unṭon kē wāstē achhī charān*
ground for the Camels here ? *hai ?*
156. Is there any tank or pond = *parāo kē nazdik kōī talāb yā johar*
near the camp. *hai ?*
157. Send this message to the sub = *yih paighām subēdār major sāhib*
edar major. *kē pās bhējō.*

158. You know that all these mes=*tum jāntē ho kih yih sab paighām*
sages are strictly confidential *nihāyat hī poshida haiṇ aur*
and that no information is to *hargiz koī khābar bāhar nah jāē.*
leak out under any circum-
stances whatever.
159. What time does the battalion=*kal subah palṭun kitnē bajē kūch*
march to-morrow morning? *karēgi?*
160. You must have the carts load=*din nikalnē sē pahlē gāriyān*
ed before sunrise. *ladwānā chāhiye.*
161. How long will it take to load=*sāmān lādne man kitnī dēr lagēgi?*
the kit?
162. Are all the mules ready? *=sab khachcharōṇ taiyyār haiṇ?*
163. See if they are all fit and the=*dekho! wah sab kām kē lāiq hī*
gear in order? *haiṇ aur unkā sāmān thik hai*
gi nahīn?
164. Get the men's kit loaded on=*jāwān ū ka sāmān un khachcharōṇ*
these mules and camels *aur ūṭon par ladwānā.*
165. Can we get any more pack=*yahān bārbardārī kē aur jānwar*
animals here? *hī mil sakte haiṇ?*
166. Where can we get forage for=*in khachcharōṇ aur gadhon kē liyē*
these mules and donkeys? *dānā bhūśā kahān mil saktā hai?*
167. How much forage do you=*kitnā dānā bhūśā chāhiye?*
want?
168. Are these mules quiet or=*yih khachcharōṇ gharib haiṇ yā*
vicious? *sharir?*
169. Load the ammunition care=*goli bārūt khabardārī se un gāriōṇ*
fully on these carts *par lādū.*
170. See that they are not over=*dēkhū! ziyādāh bojh nāh lādū.*
loaded
171. Keep these mules together=*yih khachcharōṇ ikaffhī rakhnū*
and don't make them run *daurānā mat.*
172. You must have their girths=*unkē taṅg dhlē kar dēnā.*
loosened
173. Water and feed them at the=*aglē maqām par unhēṇ pānī*
next halting station *piānā aur dānā khilānā.*
174. Don't let any one sit on the=*gārī bān (or hāṅknē wālī) kē siwā*
carts except the drivers *gāriōṇ par kisi aur ko baithnē*
nah dēnā.

175. These carts are very badly = *yih gariṃ bahut burī tarah ladī*
loaded *haiṃ.*
176. Even the ropes are not suffici- = *rassiṃ tak to kasi hūi haiṃ nahīṃ.*
ently tightened
177. The light things are placed = *halī chizē nichē rakhi haiṃ aur*
underneath and the heavy *bhāri bhāri upar.*
ones on the top
178. The wheel of this cart is = *is gārī kā pahiyā ṭūṭā hūā hai.*
broken
179. You must have it mended at = *faurān marrammāt karwānā chā-*
once *hiyē.*
180. Who is in charge of the party ? = *yih ṭolī kis kī sapurdī mēn hai ?*
or *is ṭolī kī kamān kaun karīā*
hai ?
181. Jamādār Hira Singh is res- = *jamādār Hirā Singh sāmān aur*
ponsible for the equipment *sab aur bandobast kā zimme*
and other arrangements *wār hai.*
182. Keep yourself in communica- = *main body kē sāth lagāo qāyam*
tion with the main body *rakkho.*
183. Send these carts under guard = *yih chhakrē guard kī hifāzat mēn*
to the railway station *station bhēj do.*
184. The road is very sandy and = *rāstē mēn bahut rēt hai aur kūch*
the going is rather hard *zarā mushkil hai.*
185. The country we passed through = *hamārā guzar aisē mulk mēn sē*
was all intersected with *hūi kih jis mēn bahut sē nālē,*
nullas, fences, and canals *bārān aur nahrēn thin.*
186. How long would this war last ? = *yih jag jag kab tak rahēgi ?*
187. I think it will be settled soon = *merē khyāl mēn jaldī faisalā ho*
gāyā.
188. The enemy is totally defeated = *dushman nē shikast fāsh khāyī hai.*
189. The victory is ours = *fatah hamārī hai.*
190. Our sepoy's behaved bravely = *hamārē sipāhion nē bahut bahāduri*
dīkhlayī.
191. They made a name for them- = *sangin kī larāi mēn to unhon nē*
selves in bayonet fighting *nām pā liyā.*
192. The enemy could not stand the = *dushman hamārē top khānē kī*
heavy bombardment of our *sakht golā bāri kē sāmne pāh*
artillery *ṭhāir sakē.*

193. They fled without resistance = *baghair muqāblā kiye bhāg gayē.*
194. We captured twenty pieces of = *bis topā, bahut sā goli barūd, aur*
artillery, large quantities of *hazār qaidī hāth ayē.*
ammunition and 1000 pris-
ners
195. The cavalry was ordered to = *risālē ko unkā pichhā karnē kē*
pursue them *wāstē hukam milā.*
196. The Turks are very bad shots = *turk log achhē nishānā bās nahīn.*
197. They could not hit the target = *woh nishānā nahīn mār saktē thē.*
198. We made a heavy air raid on = *dushman kē mulk par ham nē*
the enemy's country *zabardast hawāī chhāpā mārā.*
199. Bombs were thrown from the = *tabārōn sē bomb kē golē bareāyē*
airplanes *gayē.*
200. The enemy suffered a heavy = *dushman kā sakht nuqsān hūā.*
loss
201. Thousands of them were killed = *hazārōn maqtūl aur zakhmī hūē*
and wounded, and most of *aur unki aksar 'imārtōn ko*
their buildings were badly *nuqsān pahunchā.*
damaged
202. Have you ever seen sub = *tum nē kabhī ābdos kishtiyōn dekhi*
marines? *haiñ ?*
203. What do they look like? = *unki shakal kaisī hotī hai ?*
204. Most of the enemy ships were = *hamārī ābdos kishtiyōn nē dushman*
sunk by our submarines. *kē bahut sē jahāz dabodiyē.*
205. Are you on sick leave? = *tum sik līo par ho ?*
206. You say you had to take leave = *tumhārā bayān hai kiñ tum ko*
last year on account of *pichhlē sāl khānagī wu'admalāt*
private affairs. *kē sabab chhūṛī lenī parī thī.*
207. Why did not you come back = *tum waqt par wāpis hyūñ nahīn*
in time? *āyē ?*
208. You will have your pay deduc = *tumhārī ghair-hazri kī tānkha*
ted for the absence. *kafī-jāogī.*
209. You will be granted six = *tum kē daktarī certificate par chhē*
months' leave on medical *maḥīnē kī rukhṣat milēgi.*
certificate.

210. If you don't come back in time = *agar waqt par nāh hogē to ghair-*
 you will have to explain your *hāzri kā jawāb dēnā hogē.*
 absence.
211. Tell jamadar Zaffar Khan to = *jam'adār Zaffar Khan sahib sē*
 go and visit the guard, then *kaho kih jākar guard kō mulāhizā*
 to come and submit his re- *karēn, phir ākar apnī report*
 port to me. *ham ko dēn.*
212. Aha! here is the very man = *āiyē! main to' āp hī ko yād kar*
 I wanted, well! jamadar *rahā thā. Achhā jamadār sahib,*
 sahib! Have you inspected *āpnē guard kō mulāhizā kiyā. ?*
 the guard?
213. How many sentries were = *sentry kitnē thē ?*
 there?
214. Did you see their order board = *āp nē unkē hukam kō talqātā dēkhā ?*
 and explain the orders care- *aur har jawān ko hukam āchhī*
 fully to every man? *torah samjhā diyē ?*
215. Were all the men present? = *sab jawān hāzīr thē ?*
216. When were they last visited? = *is sē pahlē unkā mulāhizā kab*
hūā thā ?
217. How many rounds have they = *unkē pās kitnē round hain ?*
 got.
218. Were there any spare arms? = *kuchh fāltū raftēn thin ?*
219. At what time do you post the = *rāt kō guard kitnē bajē lagāogē ?*
 night guard?
220. At what time will the night = *night guard kī badlī kitnē bajē*
 guard be relieved? *hogī ?*
221. Give me a list of the men, who = *jo ādmī hāzri kē waqt ghair hāzīr*
 were absent at the roll call. *thr unkī ek fahrist ham ko dō.*
222. Thank you! that is very satis- = *taslim yih bahut thik hai.*
 factory.
223. The Officer Commanding will = *kaleubah kamān afsar sahib kit kō*
 have a kit inspection to- *mulāhizā karēngē.*
 morrow morning.
224. See that the arms and pouches = *dekhnā! hathiyār aur tashdān khub.*
 are well cleaned. *sāf hon.*

225. These boots have been ~~con-~~ ~~gah~~ ~~boot~~ ~~radā~~ ~~hai?~~
demned.

226. Send them for auction sale. = *nīlāmī mēn bhāg.*

227. These blankets are quite ser- = *wuh kammal kām kō hai.*
viceable.

228. This barrel is rusty. = *is nālī mēn rang hai.*

229. Why dont you clean it pre- = *tum is kō khyān thik tomr sē sāf*
perly ? *nahīn kartē ?*

230. Take care that the browning = *khabardār ! rafal kā rang nā ular*
does not get rubbed off your *jāa,*
rifle.

231. It is your duty to see that = *yih dekhnā āp kā farz hai kīh sab*
the rifles are well cleaned *rafalēn roz achhī tarah sāf kī*
every day. *jāēn.*

232. You must report any defect = *agar kisi rafal mēn koi nuqsā*
which you may discover in *m'ālūm ho to uski report karnā*
any rifle. *chāhiyē.*

233. How many men are working = *barhar khāne mēn kitnē jāwān kām*
in the armourer's shop ? *karte hai?*

234. How long will these recruits = *in rangrūton kō jām honē sē pahlē*
be under instruction before *kitnē sikhān karni hogi ?*
they join ?

235. At what time of the year do = *āp kī palṭan mēn khol tamāshō*
you hold your regimental *kab hote hai?*
sports ?

236. Do the Indian Officers take = *sardār log bahut hissā letē hai?*
much part ?

237. Remind the N. C. Os., that = *'uhdēdāron kō sūnādo kīh taraqqī*
they must obtain a certificate *milnē sē pahlē unko certificate*
before they got promotion *hāsīl karnā chāhiyē.*

238. Hullo ! Subedar Sahib ! How = *hullo ! subedār sahib ! āp kā*
do you do ? *mizāj kaisā hai ?*

239. Will you come in and take a seat = *āiyē tashrif rakhiyē ?*

240. It is a long time since I saw you. = *āp sē mile 'arsā hochukā.*

241. Can I do any thing for you ? = *farmāiyē main āpi kyā khudmai karān ?*
242. I see ! you are on the retired = *hān ! āp to pension letē hain ? list ?*
243. After how many years' service = *kitnē sāl ki naukari kē b'ad āp nē did you retire ? pension li ?*
244. What pension do you get now ? = *ab kitni pension milti hai ?*
245. Is it sufficient for you to live = *āp kē guzārē kē liyē kāfi hai ? on ?*
246. You have a big land, have = *āp kē pās zamīn to bahut si hai not you ? nah ?*
247. What crops are grown in your = *āp kē gāon mēn kyā kyā faslēn paidā village ? hoti hain. ?*
248. What are the main products ? = *khīs paidāwār kyā kyā hai ?*
249. I suppose you grow wheat, = *merē khūyāl mēn gēhūn, chanā, gram, maize, barley, rice, jāwār, jau, dhān, ikh, waghairā sugarcane and all sorts of sab qism ki chizēn paidā hoti things. hain ?*
250. Will you have a drink or a = *āp kuchh pānī wānī piengē yā cigarette ? cigarette piengē ?*
251. Let me know if I can help = *agar mēri madad darkār ho to ballā you in any way. dēnā*
252. Thank you very much, Sir, = *hazūr ki barī mīharbānī hai, khudā Good bye ! hāfiz !*

SECTION 3.

MILITARY EXERCISES.

Exercise I.

(1) How long have you been in the service? (2) How long have you been at Drill? (3) Have the recruits been sworn^(a) in? (4) Are they perfect in their drill? (5) Do they well understand the duty of sentry? (6) Do they know the danger, they expose a camp to, by leaving or falling asleep on their posts? (7) Has the recruiting party returned? (8) In what district^(b) are the best recruits procurable? (9) How long are the recruits at Drill every day? (10) When will they join the ranks? (11) Jamadar Sahib! you must see that the recruits are in the first instance^(c) instructed how to put on their accoutrements. (12) What rank do you hold in the army?

Exercise II.

(1) Warn the men to take care that all the arms and accoutrements are in a cleanly state for inspection to-morrow morning. (2) How was this man's rifle broken in the stock? (3) Was it broken through carelessness or accidentally?^(d) (4) Where do you get the pipe-clay^(e) to clean the belts with? (5) What is the ordinary weight^(f) of a man's arms and accoutrements? (6) What company is at Target Practice this morning? (7) At what distances do the men fire? (8) You must not flinch^(g) or shut your eyes if you want to hit the Target. (9) Take good aim and imagine your enemy before you. (10) How often are the sentries relieved? (11) Who posts^(h) the relieving sentry. (12) Does the Naik explain the order to the sentry each time he makes a tour?

(a) To swear, to give an oath = *qasam-dilānā* قسم دلا

(b) District = *zila* ضلع

(c) In the first instance = *sab se pahle* سب سے پہلے

(d) Accidentally = *ittifaq se* اتفاق سے

(e) Pipe-clay = *khariya mitti* کھریا مٹی

(f) Weight = *wazan* وزن

(g) To flinch = *hainā-julnā* ہلنا-جولنا

(h) To post = *lagānā* لگانا

Exercise III.

(1) Did a sepoy die in the Hospital last night ? (2) Has any list been prepared of his effects^(a) ? (3) Who is the heir^(b) to the effects of the deceased^(c) ? (4) Is any pay due^(d) to the deceased ? (5) Order these articles to be sold by Auction (6) Who is next senior to him ? (7) Have the Buniah's accounts been duly settled ? (8) What was the cause of the sepoy's death ? (9) Did he complain of being ill ? (10) How long had he been in the Regiment ? (11) Attend to the Telephone, the bell is ringing.^(e) (12) Ring him up^(f) and say, I have just arrived.

Exercise IV.

(1) Enquire, whether the camp is in the fields to day and whether water is abundant and good ? (2) The bullocks were so tired that they could not proceed further. (3) Is the bridge in good order ? (4) Is the river fordable at this season ? (5) What is the length of to-day's march ? (6) What are the roads like, are they good ? (7) Are all sorts of supplies procurable in abundance ? (8) The Officer Commanding will severely punish any one detected in plundering or committing any act of oppression.^(g) (9) This is a notorious^(h) place in India for the thieves. (10) Don't allow any strangers⁽ⁱ⁾ to wander about the camp without a pass. (11) Give me a change for a rupee.^(j) (12) Sign this receipt please.

Exercise V.

(1) Was any man absent from Roll Call the night before yesterday ? (2) Did you report the men's absence ? (3) Did he mention to

-
- (a) Effects = *māl-o-asbāb* مال و اسباب
 (b) Heir = *wāris* وارث
 (c) Deceased = *marhūm* مرحوم (for muslims). *swaragbāshi* سوارگباشی (for Hindus)
 (d) due = *wājib-ul-adā* واجب الادا
 (e) The bell is ringing = *ghanṭī laṭrahī hai* گھنٹی بج رہی ہے
 (f) To ring up = *ghanṭī dēnā* گھنٹی دینا
 (g) To commit an act of oppression = *zulm karnā* ظلم کرنا
 (h) Notorious as well as famous = *mash hūr* مشہور
 (i) Stranger = *ghair ādmī or ajnabī* غیر آدمی یا اجنبی
 (j) Change for a rupee = *ek rupayē ki rēz-gārī* ایک روپے کی ریزگاری

you his intention of deserting ? (4) Have any steps been taken to arrest and bring him back ? (5) Did he desert prior to or after his Regiment was ordered on service ? (6) Was he present or absent on the Proclamation Parade ? (a) (7) Have the waterpots kept full for the purpose of extinguishing fire. (b) (8) A big fire broke out (c) in the lines last night and all the barracks were burnt. (9) Who was the first to discover the fire ? (10) How did it occur ? (11) Caution the men against the practice of making fires in the lines. (12) Was there any sentry at the post, and did he give the alarm ?

Exercise VI.

(1) Abandon those guns. (2) These recruits are very active. (3) We advanced towards the enemy and left a party in ambush. (4) An alarm was sounded at four this morning. (5) A lot of ammunition came to our hands. (6) The wounded soldiers were bandaged and removed to the Base Hospital. (7) We attacked the enemy's lines and turned them out of their trenches. (8) See if all the men have their belts cleaned. (9) The blades of these bayonets are not very sharp. (10) The bullets began to shower (d) from all sides. (11) A party was sent under the command of Captain Hack. (12) The enemy could not stand (e) the heavy bombardment of our artillery.

Exercise VII.

(1) Have our soldiers received their Baptism of fire ? (2) Amballa has no aviation ground (f) yet. (3) He is now in the lock up. (4) A good conduct medal will be awarded to the sepoy to-morrow. (5) The cold season is the best of all, but the hot season is most trying. (6) A special service (g) will be held in the church this evening. (7) What pattern rifles are the Regiments using now-a-days ? (8) There is a fort on the top of the hill. (9). These recruits are marching very badly.

(a) Proclamation parade = *jara'ili' gawā'id* جریلی قراعد

(b) To extinguish fire = *āg-bujhānā* آگ بجھانا

(c) To break out (fire) = *āg lag jānā* آگ لگ جانا

(d) To shower = *Barasnā* برسنا

(e) To stand = (ka) *tāb-lānā* (کی) تاب لانا

(f) Aviation-ground = *hawā-jahāzon kī zamīn* ہوائی جہازوں کی زمین

(g) Service = *nīmāz* (ف) نماز

(10) They want smartening up. (11) Soldiers ! present arms.^(a) Fix bayonets,^(b) Quick march. (12) Is your gun loaded ? It was a drawn battle.^(c)

Exercise VIII.

(1) When will the Bombay Mail drop at the Plat form ? (2) What is the average speed^(d) of the trains in India ? (3) Will you weigh this luggage please ? (4) Put this trunk in the Brakevan (5) This causes great inconvenience to the passengers. (6) Has the English Mail arrived ? (7) Ask the Post Master when does the foreign Mail leave (8) What time does the first post come in ? (9) Why did you not deliver it last night Postman ? (10) Is the post office open on Sundays ? (11) The Proclamation Parade will be held to-morrow. (12) Give me one foreign envelope.

Exercise IX.

Keeping the legs straight, carry the left foot about twelve inches to the left, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet ; at the same time carry the hands behind the back and place the back of one hand in the palm of the other, grasping it lightly, with the fingers and thumb, and allowing the arms to hang easily at their full extent. (It is immaterial which hand grasps the other.)

Exercise X.

Each recruit, except the right hand man, will turn his head and eyes to the right and will then extend his right arm, back of the hand upwards, finger tips touching the shoulder of the man on his right. At the same time he will take up his dressing in line by moving, with short quick steps, till he is just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him.

(a) Present arms = *hathiyāron ki salāmi do* ہتھیاروں کی سلامی دو

(b) Fix bayonets = *sangin chaphāo* سنگین چرھاو

(c) Drawn battle = *barābar ki laṭāi* برابر کی لڑائی

(d) Average-speed = *m'amūli-raftār* معمولی رفتار

PART IV.

SECTION 1.

MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES AND SHORT STORIES

Exercise I.

In a small town in Scotland there lived a parrot.^(a) He was known to all the boys and girls in the place. He barked like a dog and could talk and sing. Pall was not shut up all day in his cage.^(b) He was very tame^(c) and was often seen walking about in the garden. Sometimes he went outside the garden gate. He was so well-known that no one harmed him. When his master came home from his work, Pall would call out "Uncle, uncle, how d'ye do?"^(d) Glad to see you.^(e) If his master found him in the garden, Pall would call out, "Uncle, uncle, take me home!"

Exercise II.

دیکھو ایک آدمی گھڑا ہے۔ اُس کے ہاتھ میں تار کا لفافہ (f) ہے۔ کسی کو دینے جا رہا ہے۔ معلوم نہیں کیا خبر لایا ہے۔ تار بھی عجیب چیز ہے۔ خط (g) بھیجے تو دو تین دن میں جراب آتا ہے۔ مگر تار سے دو تین کہنتے میں ہی خبر آ جاتی ہے۔ خواہ وہ جگہ کتنی ہی دور ہو۔ کام تو اصل میں ایک یا دو منٹ کا ہوتا ہے۔ مگر دیر اور ہی سبب سے ہو جاتی ہے۔ تار گھر میں جاؤ جو خبر بھیجنی ہو اُسے کاغذ پر لکھ کر دو۔ تار بابو اُسی وقت تمہارے سامنے کہت کہت کر دیکھا اور جہاں وہ خبر بھیجنی ہے وہاں کے دفتر کا بابو اُس کو سمجھتا اور کاغذ پر لکھتا جائیگا۔ اور جس کے پاس وہ خبر چاہی ہے۔ سرکاری آدمی کے ہاتھ (h) اُس کو بھیج دیگا۔

(a) Parrot=totā طوطا

(b) Cage=pinjra پنجرہ

(c) Tame=kilā hūā ہلاہلا

(d) How d'ye do?=āp kā mizāj kaisā hai آپ کا مزاج کیسا ہے

(e) Glad to see you=mujhē āp sē milkar bahut khūshī hūī hai مجھے آپ سے مل کر بہت خوشی ہوئی ہے

(f) lifāfā=envelope.

(g) khat=letter.

(h) kē hāth=by the hand of.

Exercise III.

One evening Pall was missed.^(a) He was not in the garden, and he was not in the house. Night came on, but Pall did not come home. Next day the bell-man^(b) was sent round the town. He went from street to street.^(c) But Pall was not brought back. No one seemed to know anything about him. One day news of the parrot came to Mr. Dow. It was said that a shoe-maker who lived in a back street^(d) had a parrot. No one had seen the bird, but his voice had been heard. Mr. Dow set off at once for the shoe-maker's house. He knocked at the door^(e) and asked the man if he had a parrot. "No!" said the shoe-maker rudely; "I have no parrot."

Exercise IV.

اندھیری رات میں ایک اندھا چراغ^(f) ہاتھ میں اور ایک گھڑا^(g) کندھے پر لئے بازار میں سے جا رہا تھا۔ کسی شخص نے اُس سے پوچھا کہ اے بیوقوف تیرے لئے تو دن اور رات دونوں برابر ہیں پھر اس چراغ سے تجھے کیا فائدہ۔ اندھے نے ہنس کر جواب دیا کہ تم تو مجھ سے بھی بڑھکر^(h) احمق ہو تمہارا خیال ہے کہ یہ چراغ میں اپنے فائدے کی واسطے لئے جاتا ہوں۔ بھائی یہ بات نہیں۔ بلکہ یہ اس لئے ہے کہ کہیں اندھیرے میں تم میرا گھڑا نہ پھوڑ ڈالو۔

Exercise V.

John was a poor old man who, lived all alone. "I should like to do some good⁽ⁱ⁾ in the world," he said to himself "but how can I? I am old and not at all clever, and I have so little money!" One day as he was thinking, he said, "I know what I will do." But he did not tell any one what he had thought of. He only worked harder than ever^(j) to earn^(k) more money.

(a) To be missed = *ghāib-honā* غائب ہونا

(b) Bell-man = *ḍugḍugī wālā* ڈگڈگی والا

(c) From street to street = *galī galī* گلی گلی

(d) Back street = *picḥhī kī galī* (vide R. 56 Vol. I) پیچھے کی گلی

(e) To knock at the door = *darwāza khaṭkhaṭānā* دروازہ کھٹکھٹانا

(f) *chirāgh* = lamp.

(g) *gharā* = earthen vessel.

(h) *barḥkar* = more.

(i) Good (noun) = *nēkī* نیکی

(j) Than ever = *pahlē se zyādah* پہلے سے زیادہ

(k) To earn = *kamānā* کمانا

Exercise VI.

بہت دنوں کی بات ہے کسی گاؤں میں ایک گوالن (a) رہتی تھی۔ وہ روز سویرے دودھ بیچنے باہر جایا کرتی تھی۔ اُسکے ایک چھوٹی سی لڑکی تھی۔ اسے بھی اپنے ساتھ لے جایا کرتی تھی۔ ایک روز دودھ بیچکر واپس جا رہی تھی کہ تھوڑی دیر آرام کرنے کے لئے ایک درخت کے نیچے بیٹھ گئی۔ لڑکی کو بھی پاس ہی زمین پر لٹا دیا۔ دھوپ بڑی تیز تھی۔ وہ پانی پینے تھوڑی دور چلی گئی اور لڑکی کو وہیں چھوڑ گئی۔ لیکن جب واپس ائی تو لڑکی کو نہ پایا۔ بہت حیران ہوئی۔

Exercise VII.

A shopkeeper was once in great trouble. He was waiting for letters which were bringing him some money. But day after day passed (b) and no letters came. At last he asked the postman if he knew anything about them. The postman said "I put all your letters into the hole in your door. You should get a letter box." The shopkeeper, you see, had only a small slit (c) in the door. When letters were put into it, they fell down on the floor (d) of the shop. The poor man did not know what to do. He needed the money very much. He knew that it had been sent to him ; and the postman said that he had put all his letters down the hole in the door. It was very strange. What could have become of the letters ? A few days passed, and then other letters were missed.

Exercise VIII.

گرمی کے موسم میں دو پہر کے وقت ایک آدمی اپنے ایک دوست کی ملاقات (e) کو چلا۔ اُسکے دوست نے اپنے مکان سے اُس شخص کو آتے دیکھ کر اپنے نوکروں کو حکم دیا کہ جب وہ آکر پوچھے کہ صاحب خانہ (f) کہاں ہیں تو جواب دینا کہ وہ ابھی ابھی کسی کے ہاں (g) کھانا کھا نے باہر گئے ہیں۔ اتنے میں (h) وہ شخص آ پہنچا اور نوکروں سے دریافت کرنے لگا (i) کہ ہمارے

(a) *gawālan* = cowherdess.

(b) Day after day passed = *din guzarte gayē* گئے دن گزرے

(c) Slit = *chhēd* چھید

(d) Floor = *farsh* فرش

(e) *mulāqāt* = meeting.

(f) *sahib-i-khāna* = master of the house.

(g) *kisi kē hān* = to some body's house.

(h) *itnē mēn* = in the meantime.

(i) *daryāft karnē lagā* = began to enquire.

دوست کہاں ہیں - نوکروں نے بتلایا کہ صاحب تو کھانا کھانے باہر تشریف لیگئے (a) ہیں۔ یہ سنتے ہی وہ بولا کہ وہ کیسے پیرقرف ہیں جو ایسی گرمی میں گھر سے باہر گئے ہیں - صاحب خانہ نے کھڑکی سے باہر سر نکال کر کہا کہ بیوقوف تو تم خود ہو کہ ایسے وقت دھوپ میں ادھر ادھر پھر رہے ہو (b) میں تو گھر سے باہر نکلا تک (c) نہیں۔

Exercise IX.

At last the shopkeeper made up his mind to sit up all night, and see if he could find out what became of his letters. Just as it began to get dark he heard the postman's step. (d) Down on the floor fell one, two, three letters. The watcher left them there. Hour after hour passed. The clock struck (e) twelve. Still the letters lay as they had fallen. Then there was a sound near the door, something moved slowly to where the letters lay. One was lifted and carried off. Then a second letter was lifted and then a third. There was the thief! Can you guess (f) who it was? A rat!

Exercise X.

ایک دفعہ کا ذکر ہے کہ دو آدمی ایک جنگل میں چلے جاتے تھے - وہ تھے ایک دوست تھے اور انکا آپس میں یہ اقرار تھا کہ ہم ایک دوسرے کا ساتھ کبھی نہ چھوڑینگے۔ چلتے چلتے اتفاق سے (g) انہیں ایک بھالو ملا۔ یہ دیکھتے ہی ایک تو درخت پر چڑھ گیا اور دوسرا مردہ بکر (h) زمین پر لیت کیا۔ اتنے میں بھالو پہنچا۔ چونکہ اس آدمی نے اپنا سانس روک رکھا تھا (i) بھالو اسے سو نگہ کر (j) اور مردہ سمجھ کر چلا گیا۔ تب چھوٹے دوست نے درخت سے اتر کر ہنسی سے بوجھا کہ بھالو آپکے کان میں کیا کہہ گیا۔ اس نے جواب دیا بھالو کہتا تھا کہ جو شخص مصیبت (k) میں تمہارا ساتھ نہیں دیتے (l) ان سے کبھی دوستی نہ کرنا۔

- (a) *tashrif lejānā* = to go (polite and respectful).
 (b) *idhar udhar phirnā* = to wander about.
 (c) *tuk* = even.
 (d) Stop (foot) = *ūhat* - آہ
 (e) To Strike = *bajānā* بجا
 (f) To guess = *būjhnā* بوجھنا
 (g) *iltifāq sī* = by chance.
 (h) *murda banakar* = pretending to be dead.
 (i) *sāns rok rakkhā thā* = had already held up his breath.
 (j) *sūngnā* = to smell.
 (k) *musibat* = distress, trouble.
 (l) *sāth dēnā* = to stand by.

Exercise XI.

A gentleman in England had an elephant which helped the gardeners in their work. It used to take up a broom^(a) with its trunk^(b) and sweep away^(c) the leaves from the walks.^(d) When the gardener was watering the flowers, the elephant would follow him about, carrying a watering pot^(e) with its trunk. Elephants can do all sorts of things^(f) with their trunks. In India they are taught many other things and they soon learn to do them as cleverly as men^(g).

Exercise XII.

ایک روز کرمی کے مرسوم میں ایک بادشاہ اور اسکا بیٹا شکار گئے۔ جب دھوپ تیز پڑنے لگی اور انہیں کرمی لگی⁽ⁱ⁾ تو انہوں نے اپنا اپنا کوت اتار کر اپنے اردلی کی پیٹھ پر ڈال دیا جو انکے ساتھ تھا۔ نہروڑی دیر کے بعد بادشاہ نے ہنسکر کہا۔ میان اردلی اب تو تمہاری پیٹھ پر ایک گدھے کا بوجھ ہے۔ اردلی حاضر جواب^(j) تھا۔ عرض کی^(k) کہ حضور ایک کا نہیں بلکہ دو گدھوں کا بوجھ ہے۔ بادشاہ چپ ہو گیا۔

Exercise XIII.

One day a huge elephant was standing in the hot sunshine. The flies were buzzing^(l) round him and he kept beating his body with his trunk to drive them off.^(m) Just at that time his master brought a

(a) Broom = *jhārū* جھارو

(b) Trunk = *sūnūl* (f) سونڈ

(c) To sweep = *jhārū-dēnā* جھار دینا

(d) Walk (of a garden) = *rawisū* روش

(e) Watering-pot = *fawwārā* فوارہ

(f) All sorts of things = *sab-qisam kē* or *sab tarah kē kām*

سب قسم کے یا سب طرح کے کام

(g) As cleverly as men = *ādmīn kī tarah hoṣhyārī sē*

آدمیوں کی طرح ہوشیاری سے

(i) *garmī lagnā* = to feel hot.

(j) *hāzīr jawāb* = witty and quick in answers.

(k) *'araz karnā* = to state (respectfully).

(l) To buz = *bhinbhinānā* بھنبھنا

(m) To drive off = *haṭānā* ہٹانا

little baby and laid it down before the animal. 'Watch it' he said, and walked away into the town. The elephant at once began to take care of^(a) the baby. He seemed no longer to mind^(b) the flies buzzing about himself. What he now cared about^(b) was to keep them from the child.

Exercise XIV.

ایک شخص نے کسی بابو کے پاس جا کر کہا کہ میری ایک چٹھی لکھ دیجئے
بابو صاحب نے جواب دیا کہ میرے تو پاؤں میں درد ہے - آدمی حیران ہو کر
پوچھنے لگا کہ آپ چٹھی ہاتھ سے لکھینگے یا پاؤں سے ؟ اگر میں آپکو کہیں بھیجنا
چاہتا تو بیشک آپ پاؤں کے درد کا بہانہ کرتے - (c) بابو صاحب بولے کہ آپ
درست فرماتے ہیں (d) لیکن آپ کو یہ معلوم نہیں کہ جب کبھی میں چٹھی
لکھتا ہوں تو اس کے پڑھنے کے واسطے بھی ہمیشہ میں ہی بلایا جاتا ہوں - چونکہ میری
لکھائی اور کوئی بھی نہیں پڑھ سکتا -

Exercise XV.

One day, a man called his dog and went off into a wood to shoot. When he had gone only a little way he met a snipe.^(e) The snipe came up to him and said 'Please do not shoot my Children if you should see them.' "But," said the man, 'how shall I know your Children if I see them?' 'What are they like?' (f) 'Like'! said the snipe. 'Why, they are the prettiest children in the world. There are no others like them.' 'Very well,' said the man; 'I will not shoot them,' and he went on his way. He went on shooting all day and filled his bag with birds. His bag was so full that he tied five young snipes with a bit of string, and carried them in his hand. As he went towards home, he met the old snipe, who said, 'oh! oh! Why did you shoot my children after all?' 'I am sure, they could not be yours,' said he, 'for I shot only the ugliest birds I could find.' 'Oh you silly man! don't you know that every

(a) To take care of = (k) khabar giri کرنا خبر گیری کرنا

(b) To mind or to care about = ki parwāh karnā کی پروا کرنا

(c) bahānā karnā = to make an excuse, to pretend.

(d) āp darust farmātē haiñ = you are quite right, "farmānā" if used by itself in a polite address means "to say" but when used in a compound verb instead of "karnā," it means "to do." "farmānā" can never be addressed to one's self.

(e) Snipe = chahā چا.

(f) What are they like? = woh kaisē haiñ وہ کیسے ہیں

mother thinks her children are the prettiest in all the world?' 'Oh! dear I never thought of that. 'I am very sorry' and he walked on looking very sad. But the dog only barked and wagged his tail,^(a) as if he would say. 'But I knew all the time.'

Exercise XVI.

- (b) ایک دفعہ کوئی سردار ایک درخت کے نیچے بیٹھا تھا - بہت سی سرخ توپیاں اُس کے پاس تھیں - کسی شہر میں بیچنے کے لئے جاتا تھا - ایک توپی سر پر رکھی اور لیت گیا - تھنڈی تھنڈی ہوا سے نیند آگئی - بندر اوپر سے درخت پر بیٹھ ہوئے یہ سب باتیں دیکھ رہے تھے - جب وہ سو گیا تو ایک ایک کر کے نیچے آئے - ایک ایک توپی لے درخت پر جا چڑھا اور پہن کر ٹہنیوں پر پھرنے اور شور مچانے لگے (c) سردار کو بھی جاگ اٹھا - دیکھا تو گڈھڑی کھلی پڑی تھی - اور توپیاں غالب ہیں - حیران تھا کہ کون لیتا ہے - اوپر نظر کی تو دیکھا کہ بندر تو پیاں پھرنے ہوئے ادھر ادھر پھر رہے ہیں - اس نے بہت کوشش کی مگر ایک توپی بھی ہاتھ نہ آئی - آخر اپنے سر کی توپی بھی اتار کر پھینک دی اور کہا لو یہ بھی لے جاؤ ایک کو میں کیا کرونگا ؟

Exercise XVII.

The war when it came was short and sharp. General Harris took command on February 3, 1799, A. D.^(d) and on the 5th of the following month^(e) his troops entered Mysore. On the 4th of April, Tipu lay dead inside the breach^(f) in the walls^(g) of the fort, which had been stormed by General Baird and his men in seven minutes. Thus was fulfilled the saying that Haidar Ali was born to win, and Tipu to lose a kingdom.

(a) To wag the tail = *dum hilānā* دم ہلانا

(b) *surkh* = red.

(c) *shor machānē lagē* = began to make a noise.

(d) • On February 3rd 1799 A. D. = *tin farwārī san satrah sau minānawō iswī ko* ۳ فروری سنہ ۱۷۹۹ء کو

(e) On the 5th of the following month = *aglā mahinē kī pāñch tārikh ko* اگلے مہینے کی پانچ تاریخ کو

(f) Breach = *shigāf* شکاف

(g) Wall (of a fort or city.) = *fasil* (f) فصیل

Exercise XVIII.

راؤ کے بھاگنے کی خبر سنکر حیدر نے اسکی فوج پر حملہ کر دیا اور آسانی سے فتح حاصل کر لی۔ توہین اور سارا سامان حیدر کے ہاتھ لگا (a) اور دشمن کی فوج اس سے مل گئی۔ چند مہینے میں اسنے دشمن کے سارے قلعے ایک ایک کر کے (b) لے لئے۔ پھر اپنی ساری فوج کو گاؤں کی طرف جمع کر لیا۔ اور چند روز وہاں ٹھہر کر ایک گاؤں کو پار کر کے دشمن کے سر پر جا پہنچا۔ اور اسے شکست دی۔ راؤ کو گرفتار کر لیا۔ کہتے ہیں کہ رانیوں نے حیدر سے کہا کہ اس غریب بڑھن کو چھوڑ دو۔ حیدر نے جواب دیا کہ میں تو اسے طوطے کی طرح پالونگا۔ حیدر نے اپنا وعدہ پورا کیا۔ راؤ کو لوہے کے پنجرے میں رکھا۔ اور مرنے تک دودھ بہات کھانے کو دیتا رہا۔

Exercise XIX.

Among the most famous Military feats of the reign, was the storming of the Rajput fortress of Chittor, the siege of which lasted for four months. The operations of the besiegers (c) were under the personal direction of Akbar, (d) who himself shot the Rajput Commander. That shot decided the fate of the fortress. The defenders (e) quitted the walls, and saved the honour of their wives and daughters by the awful rite (f) of "johar" or sacrifice by fire.

Exercise XX.

بیرم خان اپنی جان لیکے بھاگا۔ اسکا سچا دوست قاسم بھی ساتھ تھا۔ ایک دن دونوں ایک درخت کے نیچے بیٹھے تھے۔ کہ ایک انسر بہت سے سپاہی لئے وہاں آ پہنچا۔ اور پوچھا کہ تم کون ہو۔ کہاں سے آئے ہو۔ کہاں جاؤ گے؟ قاسم نے کہا کہ مسافر ہیں۔ مکے جانے کے لئے سورت کی طرف جا رہے ہیں۔ انسر کے دل میں کچھ شک پیدا ہوا۔ ہمراہیوں (g) سے پوچھا کہ تم میں سے کوئی انکو پہچانتا ہے۔ ایک بڈھے سوار نے قاسم کی طرف انگلی اٹھا کے کہا کہ یہ تو بیرم خان ہے۔ یہ سننے ہی بیرم نے کہا کہ بیرم خان میں ہوں۔ یہ تو میرا نوکر ہے۔ قاسم بول اٹھا کہ بیرم تو میں ہوں۔ یہ میرا غلام (h) ہے۔ میری جان بچانے کے لئے آپ کو بیرم بتاتا ہے۔

(a) (kē) kāth lagnā = to come in one's possession.

(b) ek ek karkē = one after another.

(c) Besiegers = muhāsarin محاصرین

(d) Were under the personal direction of Akbar = Akbar bazūt-i-akbar بذات خود ہدایت کر رہا تھا

(e) Defenders (or besieged) = mahāsarin محصورین

(f) rite = rasm (f) رسم

(g) hamrahī = an attendant or companion.

(h) ghulām = slave.

Exercise XXI.

An English lady was once living with her husband and baby girl in a very wild part of India. One day the lady was alone with her child in their little wooden house. She was sewing, ^(a) when all at once she heard a thump overhead, as if, ^(b) something had fallen on the roof. She thought little of it, for she was used to strange sounds. ^(c) But by and by ^(d) she heard a heavy breathing in the next room. She got up from her chair as softly as she could and crept to the door away. It was only covered by a curtain. ^(e) She pulled this aside ^(f) and peeped ^(g) through. In front of her was the largest panther she had ever seen ^(h) and he was looking straight into her eyes.

Exercise XXII.

ناصرالدین ہندوستان کا ایک بادشاہ تھا۔ اس کے ایک ہی بیگم تھی وہ گھر کا سارا کام اپنے ہاتھ سے کرتی اور کھانا بھی آپ ہی پکاتی تھی۔ ایک دن روٹی پکاتے اس کا ہاتھ جل گیا۔ دھرتے دھرتے بادشاہ سے کہا کہ کھانا پکانے کے لئے ایک لونڈی ⁽ⁱ⁾ ہوتی تو اچھا تھا۔ بادشاہ نے کہا کہ بیگم یہ تو تم جانتی ہی ہو کہ میری آمدنی ^(j) اتنی قلیل ^(k) ہے کہ کھانے پینے کا گزارہ مشکل سے چلتا ہے۔ کتابیں ^(l) لکھ لکھ کے بیچتا ہوں۔ میں لونڈی کہاں سے مول لے سکتا ہوں۔ رہا شاہی خزانہ ^(l)

(a) To sew = *sinā* سبنا

(b) As if = *goyā* گویا

(c) She was used to strange sounds = *ruh ajib-o-zharib āwāzēn sunnē ki 'ādī thī* وہ عجیب و غریب آوازیں سننے کی عادی تھی

(d) by and by = *rafta rafta* رفتہ رفتہ

(e) was covered by a curtain = *pardah parā thā* پردہ پرا تھا

(f) To pull aside = *haṭānā* ہٹانا

(g) To peep = *jhānkṇā* جھانکنا

(h) She had ever seen = *jō'usno kabhī nahīn dekhā thā*

جو اُس نے کبھی نہیں دیکھا تھا

(i) *laundī* = a female slave.

(j) *āmadnī* = income.

(k) *qalīl* = small.

(l) *rahā shāhī khazānā* = as to the royal treasury.

وہ تو رعیت کا مال ہے۔ انہی کے آرام اور فائدے کے کاموں میں خرچ کر سکتا ہوں۔
اگر اس میں سے ایک پیسہ بھی اپنے اوپر خرچ کروں تو خدا کو کیا جواب دوںگا۔

Exercise XXIII.

Some sailors^(a) once came to an inn where a showman^(b) had lodged a number of wild animals. Almost all^(c) of those were in cages; but one a large black bear, was sleeping on the ground. One of the sailors was a very vain fellow,^(d) who liked his mates to think that he knew all about everything. He began to tell them about the animals and seemed so clever that a crowd of people came round to hear what he had to say. The showman was much amused at the sailor. "I should like a fellow like that to help me with my show," he said to himself, "because he talks so well. But he would have to learn a great deal first, for nearly all he says is wrong."

Exercise XXIV.

ایک سوداگر نے سفر کا ارادہ کیا۔ اس کے پاس کچھ لوہا تھا۔ وہ لوہا لیکر ایک دوست کے پاس گیا اور کہا کہ میں تو باہر جانا ہوں۔ مہربانی سے یہ لوہا اپنے گھر رکھ لو۔ واپس آکر لیلنگا-سوداگر کا یہ دوست بڑا ہی بے ایمان^(e) تھا۔ دل میں بہت خوش ہوا۔ سمجھا کہ یہ واپس نہیں آئیگا اور لوہا میرے کام آئیگا۔ سوداگر سے کہا کہ تمہارا گھر ہے۔ رکھ جاؤ۔ چند روز کے بعد سوداگر واپس آیا۔ اور اپنے دوست کے ہاں جا کر لوہا مانگا۔ دوست نے کہا کہ تمہارا لوہا تو انیسوس^(f) چوہوں نے کھا لیا۔ سوداگر یہ بات سنکر بہت حیران ہوا۔ سمجھا کہ یہ بے ایمان ہے۔ اسکی مرضی لوہا دینے کی نہیں ہے۔ چپ ہو گیا۔ اس دوست کے ایک ہی لڑکا تھا۔ وہ اس لڑکے سے بہت محبت کرتا^(g) تھا۔ ایک دن سوداگر اس لڑکے کو اپنے گھر

(a) Sailor = *mallāh* ملاح

(b) Showman = *tāmāsha dikhānā wāla* تماشہ دکھانے والا

(c) Almost all = *qarībān sab* تقریباً سب

(d) Vain fellow = *shākhū bāz* شہی باز

(e) *bē imān* = dishonest.

(f) *afsa* = alas!

(g) *mahabbat karnā* = to love.

لیگیا۔ اور اسکو چہپا دیا۔ شام کے وقت دوست نے آ کر اپنا لڑکا مانگا۔ سوداگر اسے دیکھتے ہی رونے لگا۔ اور بولا افسوس ایک چڑھا لڑکے کو اُٹھا لیگیا۔ دوست یہ بات سنکر ہنسا اور کہا بھائی اپنا لوہا لیاؤ اور میرا لڑکا مجھے دیدو۔

Exercise XXV.

"It is strange,"^(a) said the sailor to the crowd,^(b) "that big animals are always more stupid than little ones. Look at this bear, now, the biggest and the strongest animal in the whole show. Yet he is the only one who has been stupid enough to do just what he is told to do, and dance^(c) at his master's order." To show that he did not care a bit for the bear, the sailor gave him a poke^(d) with his stick. In a moment the bear jumped up. He sprang on the sailor, caught him by the waist, and shook him as a dog shakes a rat. The man kicked and howled^(e) the showman pulled at the bear; but the bear shook, untill he was beaten off by the sailor's mates. "A bear may be a very stupid beast" said the showman; "but the man who torments him when he is asleep is a great deal more stupid." All the people laughed and said that the sailor had had a good lesson.^(f)

Exercise XXVI.

ایک شخص کے ہاں لڑکا پیدا ہوا۔ وہ اسی روز ایک بڑھئی کے پاس گیا۔ اور بولا۔ یہ پانچ روپے لو اور میرے بچے کے لئے ایک چھوٹا سا پلنگ بنا دو۔ بڑھئی نے کہا اچھا آٹھ روز میں تیار ہو جائیگا۔ آپ جمعہ کے روز آ کر لیجا لیں۔ ہفتے کے بعد اس شخص نے پھر جا کر پلنگ مانگا تو وہ ابھی تیار نہیں ہوا تھا۔ بڑھئی نے

(a) It is strange = ta'ajub ki bāt hai جب کی بات ہے

(b) Crowd = bhāt or majm'a مجمع (f)

(c) To dance = nāchnā ناچنا

(d) Poke = khonch (f) کھونچ

(e) To kick = lāt mārna لات مارنا

To howle = wāwēla machānā وارہلا مچانا

(f) Lesson = sabaq سبق

پھر آٹھ روز میں دینے کا اقرار کیا (a) اسی طرح آدمی انتظار کرتا رہا (b) یہاں تک کہ (c) اسکا لڑکا جرات ہو گیا اور اسکی شادی بھی ہو چکی۔ تھوڑے دن بعد اس لڑکے کے ہاں ایک بچہ پیدا ہوا۔ اور اسنے اپنے باپ سے کہا کہ بچے کے لئے ایک پلنگ چاہئے۔ باپ نے جواب دیا کہ فلاں (d) بڑھئی کے پاس جاؤ۔ بیس سال ہوئے میں نے تمہارے واسطے ایک پلنگ بنانے کے لئے اسے روپے دئے تھے۔ اس سے پلنگ لے آؤ۔ لڑکے نے بڑھئی کے پاس جا کر پلنگ مانگا۔ یہ سنئے ہی بڑھئی نے ۱۱ ناراض ہو کر (e) روپیہ زمین پر پھینک دیا کہ آپ تو اتنی جلدی کرتے ہیں کہ میں آپ کا کام نہیں بنا سکتا۔

Exercise XXVII.

The boy stood on a chair and took the umbrella (f) from its place. It was an ugly old thing. "Isn't it a beauty," asked the little girl, who had never seen a better one. The King smiled. (g) "Will you lend it to me" he said. The children looked at one another. (h) "Have you far to go Sir?" asked one. "Yes the walk will take me nearly an hour." "You will bring it back, Sir. We should be scolded (i) if we lost our fine umbrella." "Oh yes; you shall have it to-morrow, full of florins, (j) too." The eldest boy thought this was too good to be true. "That's easy to say," he cried. "Well, you will see. It is raining as hard as ever and I want very much to get home, so I am sure (k) you will lend it to me."

(a) *dēnē kā iqrār kiya* = promised to give.

(b) *intzār kartā rahā* = remained waiting.

(c) *yahān tak kih* = so much so or untill.

(d) *fulān* = so and so.

(e) *nārāz hokar* = getting annoyed.

(f) Umbrella = *chhātā* چھاتا

(g) To smile = *muskarānā* مسکرائنا

(h) at one another = *ek-dūsarī-kī-taraf* ایک دوسرے کی طرف

(i) To scold = *dhamkī dēnā* دھمکی دینا

To be scolded = *dhamkī khānā yā milnā* دھمکی کھانا یا ملنا

(j) Full of florins = *rupayē sē bharā* روپے سے بھرا

(k) I am sure = *mujhē yaqīn hai* مجھے یقین ہے

Exercise XXVIII.

ایک جوان عورت کے لڑکے کو کالے سانپ نے کاٹ لیا۔ وہ لڑکے کی لاش اٹھا کر بدہ کے پاس لیگئی۔ اور رو کر کہا کہ کوئی ایسی دوا بتا دیجئے جس سے یہ لڑکا اچھا ہو جائے (a) بدہ نے کہا کہ جاؤ جس گھر میں کوئی موت نہ ہوئی ہو وہاں سے ایک کالا کپڑا لے آؤ۔ جب اگلے روز بدہ دریا کے کنارے پر پہنچا تو وہی عورت ملی۔ عورت نے پوچھا کہ مجھے پہچانتے ہو مجھے آپ نے کالا کپڑا لانے کو کہا تھا۔ بدہ نے پوچھا کہ کپڑا لائی ہو؟ عورت نے جواب دیا کہ میں گھر گھر (b) گئی مگر ایسا کوئی مکان (c) نہ ملا جہاں آج تک کوئی نہ مرا ہو۔ لاش کو دریا کنارے رکھ کر میں آپ کے پاس آئی ہوں۔ مہربانی سے یہ بتا دیجئے کہ ایسا گھر کہاں ہے۔ تا کہ میں جا کر کپڑا مانگ لاؤں۔ بدہ نے کہا میری پیاری بہن۔ کل جب تم لڑکے کو مہرے پاس لائی تھیں میں جانتا تھا کہ وہ مر گیا ہے۔ اور کوئی اس کو زندہ نہیں کر سکتا۔ میں تم کو صرف یہ بتلانا چاہتا تھا کہ ساری دنیا تمہارے شامل حال ہے۔

(a) *achchhā hojānā* = to be cured.

(b) *ghar ghar* = to every house.

(c) *makān* = a building or house.

SECTION 2.*Colloquial***IDIOMATIC SENTENCES.****Exercise I.**

(1) At this time of the year I do not rise at 5 o'clock in the morning. I rise a little before seven. (2) It was now 6 P. M. and too late to start on our journey. (3) The tents were pitched in a line and beds placed inside the tents. (4) A couple of blankets was supplied to each bed. (5) The captain was slain and the soldiers were seized with panic. (6) This book was written by me. (7) His house and goods were sold. (8) The city was taken, the inhabitants fled. (9) Some things are known, others are unknown. (10) He was not at all hurt. (11) The servant went home and caught cold. (12) How long does the hot season last here? (13) How long will it take from here to the station? (14) When will your son be married?

Exercise II.

(1) I would have gone to see you if I had known you were here. (2) He reached the house about an hour after I left it. (3) Though the rain is out of season, it will do some good to the crops. (4) Every one standing by, was astonished. (5) This gun has cost me three pounds. (6) He died at last at the age of 45. Fever was the cause of his death. (7) The Hindoos have laws of their own, the Mohammdans have laws of their own, but the two sets of laws are not the same. (8) He is seriously sick, so at least he appears to be. (9) He works hard and desires to earn his own living. (10) The child grew worse every day. (11) This was a foolish act. (12) There is profit in all labour.

Exercise III.

(1) As soon as the master entered the room, every one was silent. (2) What does he mean by such impertinence. (3) He not only made a promise, but also kept it. (4) Our present house suits us exactly. (5) I should be very glad to be able to help him in any way. (6) He was very sorry on finding out his mistake. (7) It is not known precisely when Budha was born. (8) We know what we are, but we do not know what we shall be. (9) As the sun has set, we had better start for home. (10) The higher we go up, the cooler the air becomes. (11) It is now too late, so we had better go to bed. (12) You desired me to start and so I am ready to do so.

Exercise IV.

(1) His language was full of fire and fury. (2) We arrived home safe and sound. (3) If that is what you mean to do, well and good. (4) The sun is too hot for us to go out at present. (5) If he were to see me he would know me at once. (6) In case you give me leave, I will start at once. (7) The younger brother is cleverer than the elder. (8) Very few countries are as hot as India. (9) That book has interested me greatly. (10) Would that I had not wasted my time when I was young. (11) I wish I had never left my home. (12) You are not taller than he is.

Exercise V.

(1) He is senior to (elder than) me in respect of (in) service. (2) None of them were present. (3) It is one and the same thing for me. (4) They shouted to one another. (5) He is in a bad temper to-day. (6) I am very tired with that long walk. (7) He will write to me soon. (8) The animals went out two by two. (9) This is the same man that came yesterday. (10) It was the same kind of house as yours. (11) No sooner had we left the house than it began to rain. (12) I hope you will look sharp.

Exercise VI.

(1) No one knows where he is going. (2) I resolved to be very careful. (3) There is no doubt about it. (4) He is going somewhere, but I do not know. (5) You have come for a certain purpose. (6) One of the great annual fairs is held at Mathra. (7) My house is at four miles distance from the sea. (8) His son died at ten years of age. (9) Are you coming to the meeting to-day. (10) I do not doubt that he is ill. (11) I hope you will excuse my not coming here to-day. (12) I beg to inquire whether I may go home?

SECTION 3.

(1) IMPORTANT LISTS OF SOME EXCEPTIONAL WORDS.

1. The following nouns are masculine (exceptions to Rule 27, Vol. I) viz:—

Water	= <i>pāni</i>	پانی	Arrangements	} <i>bandobast</i>	بلدوبست
Purified butter	} <i>ghī</i>	گھی	Time	= <i>waqt</i>	وقت
Pearl	= <i>moti</i>	موتی	Field	= <i>khēt</i>	کھیت
Heart	= <i>jī</i>	جی	Proof	= <i>saḥūt</i>	ثبوت
Curd	= <i>dahi</i>	دھی	tooth	= <i>dānt</i>	دانت
Tree	= <i>darakht</i>	درخت	A drink	= <i>sharbat</i>	شربت
Meat	= <i>goṣht</i>	گوشت	An idol	= <i>but</i>	بت
Throne	= <i>takht</i>	تخت			

2. Most of the nouns ending in "A" are masculines (vide foot note to Page 16 Vol. I) but, the following are feminines, viz:—

Medicine	= <i>dawā</i>	دوا	Prayer	= <i>du'ā</i>	دعا
Punishment	= <i>sazā</i>	سزا	Calamity	= <i>balā</i>	بلا
World	= <i>duṇyā</i>	دنیا	Bird	= <i>chiriyā</i>	چوہا
Necklace	= <i>mālā</i>	مالا	Fault	= <i>khaṭā</i>	خطا
An inn	= <i>sarā</i>	سرا	Furlough	= <i>razā</i>	رضا
Tea	= <i>chā</i>	چا	Recovery	= <i>shifā</i>	شفاء
Air	= <i>havā</i>	ہوا	Place	= <i>jagah</i>	جگہ
Worship	= <i>pūjā</i>	پوجا	Time	= <i>daf'ah</i>	دفعہ

3. The following verbs require "ے" to be used after their objects, if any expressed, viz:—

To be acquainted with	} <i>wāqif-honā</i>	واقف ہونا	To Marry	= <i>shādi-karnā</i>	شادی کرنا
To meet	= <i>mīlnā</i>	ملنا	To be pleased	= <i>khūsh-honā</i>	خوش ہونا
To visit, interview	} <i>mulāqāt-karnā</i>	ملاقات کرنا	To be angry	= <i>khafā-honā</i>	خفا ہونا
To treat	= <i>salūk-karnā</i>	سلوک کرنا	To treat, to receive	} <i>pēsh-ānā</i>	پیش آنا
To promise	{ <i>w'adah-karnā</i>	وعدہ کرنا	To love	{ <i>mahabbat-karnā</i>	محبت کرنا
To fear	= <i>darnā</i>	ڈرنا	To fight	= <i>larnā</i>	لڑنا
To tie	= <i>bāndhnā</i>	باندھنا	To ask	= <i>pūchhnā</i>	پوچھنا
To refuse	= <i>inkār-karnā</i>	انکار کرنا	To say	= <i>kahnā</i>	کہنا

4. The following verbs require "par پر" after their objects, if any expressed, viz :—

To attack	= <i>hamla karnā</i> حملہ کرنا	To suspect	= <i>shubah karnā</i> شبہ کرنا
To oppress	= <i>zulm karnā</i> ظلم کرنا	To do injustice to	= <i>bē-insāfi karnā</i> بے انصافی کرنا
To be kind to	= <i>mīharbānī karnā</i> مہربانی کرنا	To take pity on	= <i>rahm khānā</i> رحم کرنا
To doubt	= <i>shāhk karnā</i> شک کرنا		

5. The following verbs require the genitive "ka کا" before them only after the object, if any expressed, viz :—

To pursue	= <i>pāchhā karnā</i> پیچھا کرنا	To damage	= <i>nuqsān karnā</i> نقصان کرنا
To thank	= <i>shukr karnā</i> شکر کرنا	To be fond of	= <i>shauqīn honā</i> شوقین ہونا
To reply	= <i>jawāb dēnā</i> جواب دینا		
To intend	= <i>irāda karnā</i> ارادہ کرنا		

(2) A LIST OF FEMININE NOUNS.

The following is a list of some of the most important feminine nouns :—

Eye	= <i>ānkh</i> آنکھ	Rook	= <i>chāṭān</i> چٹان
Ashes	= <i>rākh</i> راکھ	Opium	= <i>afyūn</i> افیون
Way	= <i>rāh</i> راہ	Neck	= <i>gardan</i> گردن
Understand- ing	= <i>samājh</i> سمجھ	Bayonet	= <i>sangīn</i> سنگین
Hunger	= <i>bhūkh</i> بھوکھ	Plague	= <i>tā'un</i> طاعون
Back	= <i>pīṭh</i> پیٹھ	Wool	= <i>ūn</i> اُون
Moustache	= <i>mūchh</i> مونچھ	News	= <i>khabar</i> خبر
Refuge or shelter	= <i>panāh</i> پناہ	Grave	= <i>qabr</i> قبر
Care	= <i>parwāh</i> پروراء	Distance	= <i>dūr</i> دُور
Pay	= <i>tanqūwāh</i> تنخواہ	Delay	= <i>dēr</i> دیر
Bottom	= <i>tah</i> تہ	Age	= <i>'umr</i> عمر
Tongue	= <i>jībh</i> جیبھ	String	= <i>dor</i> دُور
Life	= <i>jān</i> جان	Wall	= <i>dīvār</i> دیوار
thigh	= <i>rān</i> ران	Government	= <i>sarkār</i> سرکار
Language (also tongue)	= <i>zabān</i> زبان	Sword	= <i>talwār</i> تلوار
Bow	= <i>kamān</i> کمان	Morning	= <i>fajār</i> فجر
Shop	= <i>dukān</i> درکان	A walk	= <i>sair</i> سیر
Regiment	= <i>palān</i> پلٹن	Canal	= <i>nahar</i> نہر
Ground	= <i>amīn</i> زمین	Seal	= <i>muhār</i> مهر
		Waist	= <i>kamar</i> کمر
		Sight (eye)	= <i>nazar</i> نظر
		A present	= <i>nizr</i> نذر

Beating	= <i>mār</i>	مار	Proverb	= <i>masāl</i>	مثل
Plan	= <i>tadbīr</i>	تدبیر	Example	= <i>mīśāl</i>	مثال
A line	= <i>qatār</i>	قطار	Shield	= <i>dhāl</i>	ڈھال
Picture	= <i>taswīr</i>	تصویر	Crop	= <i>fasāl</i>	فصل
Chain	= <i>zanjīr</i>	زنجیر	Mistake	= <i>bhāl</i>	بھول
Anxiety	= <i>fīkr</i>	فکر	Sort, kind	= <i>qisām</i>	قسم
Fault	= <i>taqsīr</i>	تقصیر	Oath	= <i>qasām</i>	قسم
Attention	= <i>ghaur</i>	غور	Evening	= <i>shām</i>	شام
Thing	= <i>chīz</i>	چیز	Tribes	= <i>qawm</i>	قوم
Prayer	= <i>ni māz</i>	نماز	Tail	= <i>dum</i>	دم
Table	= <i>mēz</i>	میز	Shame	= <i>sharm</i>	شرم
Sound	or } <i>āwāz</i>	آواز	Silk	= <i>rēsham</i>	ریشم
voice			Item	= <i>raqam</i>	رقم
Plan	= <i>tajwīz</i>	تجویز	Grass	= <i>ghās</i>	گھاس
Hope	= <i>umīd</i>	امید	Thirst	= <i>piyās</i>	پیناس
Help	= <i>madad</i>	مدد	Meeting	= <i>majlis</i>	مجلس
Parade	= <i>qawā'id</i>	قواعد	Buffalow	= <i>bhaiṇs</i>	بھینس
Imprisonment	} <i>qaid</i>	قید	Advice	= <i>salāh</i>	صلاح
Remembrance			Peace	= <i>sulāh</i>	صلح
Sleep	= <i>nīd</i>	نیند	Victory	= <i>fatah</i>	فتح
Boundary	= <i>had</i>	حد	Morning	= <i>subah</i>	صبح
Rations	= <i>rasad</i>	رشد	Branch	= <i>shākh</i>	شاخ
Ball	= <i>gēnd</i>	گیند	Peg	= <i>mēkh</i>	میخ
Approval	= <i>pasand</i>	پسند	Date or History	} <i>tārīkh</i>	تاریخ
Range	= <i>zad</i>	زد	Stirrup		
Complaint	= <i>faryād</i>	فریاد	Wine	= <i>sharāb</i>	شراب
Foundation	= <i>lunyād</i>	بنیاد	Blow	= <i>arab</i>	ضرب
Cover	= <i>ār</i>	آر	Pay	= <i>talab</i>	طلب
Crowd	= <i>bhīr</i>	بھیر	Pocket	= <i>jēb</i>	جیب
Root	= <i>jar</i>	جز	Book	= <i>kitāb</i>	کتاب
Shower	= <i>bauchhār</i>	بوچھاڑ	Cannon	= <i>top</i>	توپ
Cold	= <i>thanḍ</i>	ٹھنڈ	Sunshine	= <i>dhūp</i>	دھوپ
Lake	= <i>jhāl</i>	جھیل	Road	= <i>sarak</i>	سڑک
Difficulty	= <i>mushkāl</i>	مشکل	Post, mail	= <i>dāk</i>	ڈاک
Movement	= <i>chāl</i>	چال	Dust	= <i>khāk</i>	خاک
Reconnaissance	= <i>dēkh-bhāl</i>	دیکھ بھال	Reinforcement	} <i>kumak</i>	کمک
Pistol	= <i>pistaul</i>	پستول	Food		
Stage, or Halting place	} <i>manzil</i>	منزل	Small pox	= <i>cherhak</i>	چھچک
			Fire	= <i>āg</i>	آگ

Leg	= <i>fāng</i>	نای	Hurt	= <i>chof</i>	چوت
A mine	= <i>surang</i>	سرنی	Rifle or gun	= <i>bandūq</i>	بندوق
Army	= <i>fauj</i>	فرج	Object	= <i>ghara</i>	غرض
Thunder	= <i>garaaj</i>	گرج	Information	= <i>itlā'a</i>	اطلام
Ice, snow	= <i>barf</i>	برف	Smell	= <i>bū</i>	بو
Line= <i>saf</i> مف	Side= <i>taraf</i> طرف		Boat	= <i>nāo</i>	ناؤ
Trouble	= <i>taklif</i>	تکلیف	Opinion	= <i>rāē</i>	راے

(3) LIST OF WORDS SIMILAR IN FORM.

The following is the list of words similar to one another, and the student is strongly advised not only to note carefully, the difference in spelling; but also to pay special attention to the correct pronunciation of each group :—

- To take = *lēnā* لہنا
- To bring = *lānā* لانا
- To fight = *larṇā* لڑنا
- To speak = *bolnā* بولنا
- To forget = *bhūlnā* بھولنا
- To call = *bulānā* بلانا
- To send for = *bulwānā* بلوانا
- To ask = *pūchhnā* پوچھنا
- To arrive = *pakhunchnā* پہنچنا
- To wipe = *ponchhnā* پونچھنا
- To dismount = *utarnā* اُتارنا
- To take off = *utārnā* اُتارنا
- To get up = *uṭhnā* اُٹھنا
- To lift up = *uṭhānā* اُٹھانا
- To graze = *charṇā* چرنا
- To climb = *charḥnā* چڑھنا
- To tend = *charānā* چرانا
- To make to climb } *chaṛḥhānā* چڑھانا
- To steal = *churānā* چورانا
- To leave = *chhorṇā* چھوڑنا
- To die = *marnā* مارنا
- To strike = *mārnā* مارنا
- To kill = { *mār dālṇā* مار ڈالنا
- To find, obtain, or to be allowed. } *pānā* پانا
- To read = *paṛhnā* پڑھنا
- To fall or to have to } *paṛnā* پڑنا
- To tear = *phārnā* پھاڑنا
- To go = *jānā* جانا
- To know = *jānnā* جاننا
- To sleep (also gold) } *sonā* سونا
- To hear, or to listen } *sunṇā* سُننا
- To Cook = *pakānā* پکانا
- To be cooked } *pakṇā* پکنا
- To catch = *pakaṛnā* پکڑنا
- To stop (tr.) = *roknā* روکنا
- To halt = *rukṇā* رکنا
- To keep, put = *rakhnā* رکھنا
- To dwell, remain } *rahnā* رہنا
- To say = *kahnā* کہنا
- To do = *karnā* کرنا
- To eat = *khānā* کھانا
- To send = *bhējṇā* بھیجنا
- To sell = *bēchnā* بیچنا
- To spin = *kātnā* کاٹنا
- To cut = *kāṭnā* کاٹنا
- To dig = *khodnā* کھودنا
- To jump = *kudnā* کودنا
- To walk = *chalnā* چلنا
- To make to walk } *chalānā* چلانا
- To scream = *chillānā* چلانا
- To flow = *bahnā* بہنا
- To advance = *baṛhnā* بڑھنا
- To fill = *bharnā* بھرننا

18. Inside	= <i>andar</i>	اندر	34. Pole (of a tent)	= <i>lalli</i>	بلی
Egg	= <i>andā</i>	اندا	Cat	= <i>lilli</i>	بلی
Blind	= <i>andhā</i>	اندها	35. Gurden	= <i>lāgh</i>	باغ
Dark	= <i>andhērā</i>	اندهیرا	Tiger	= <i>bāgh</i>	پاکه
19. To day	= <i>āj</i>	آج	To run away	= <i>lhāg (jānā)</i>	بھاگ جانا
Fire	= <i>āg</i>	آگ	36. Tiger	= <i>shēr</i>	شیر
20. Thing, matter	= <i>lāt</i>	بات	City	= <i>shahar</i>	شہر
Rice	= <i>lhāt</i>	بھات	57. Ten	= <i>chā</i>	چا
Very	= <i>lahut</i>	بہت	Four	= <i>chār</i>	چار
21. Bad	= <i>burā</i>	برا	Six	= <i>chh</i>	چھ
Great	= <i>boṛā</i>	بڑا	38. A few	= <i>chand</i>	چند
22. Deaf	= <i>bohrā</i>	بہرا	Moon	= <i>chānd</i>	چاند
Full	= <i>lharā</i>	بھرا	Moonlight	= <i>chāndni</i>	چاندنی
23. Old	= <i>lvrhā</i>	بڑھا	Silver	= <i>chāndī</i>	چاندی
Brown	= <i>bhūrā</i>	بھورا	39. Day	= <i>din</i>	دن
24. Old	= <i>buddhā</i>	بڑھا	Religion	= <i>din</i>	دین
Ungainly	= <i>lhaddā</i>	بھدا	40. Day	= <i>roz</i>	روز
25. Sand	= <i>lālū</i>	بالو	Strength	= <i>zor</i>	زور
Boar	= <i>bhālū</i>	بھالو	41. Bucket	= <i>dol</i>	ڈول
26. Outside	= <i>lāhar</i>	بہار	Drum	= <i>dhol</i>	ڈھول
Spring	= <i>lohār</i>	بھار	42. Breath	= <i>dam</i>	دم
27. Heavy	= <i>lhārī</i>	بھاری	Tail	= <i>dam</i>	دم
Turn	= <i>lārī</i>	باری	Price	= <i>dām</i>	دام
28. Sun	= <i>sūraj</i>	سورج	43. Wise	= <i>dinā</i>	دانا
Hole	= <i>sūrākh</i>	سوراخ	Gram	= <i>dāna</i>	دانہ
29. Open	= <i>khulā</i>	کھلا	Bit or mouth (of a river)	= <i>dahāna</i>	دھنا
Black	= <i>kālā</i>	کالا	44. British soldier	= <i>gorā</i>	گورا
Empty	= <i>khālī</i>	خالی	Horse	= <i>ghorā</i>	گھوڑا
30. Fear	= <i>dar</i>	ڈر	45. Carriage	= <i>gārī</i>	گازی
Pain	= <i>dard</i>	درد	Watch	= <i>gharī</i>	گھڑی
Delay	= <i>dīr</i>	دیر	46. Slow	= <i>jūtā</i>	چرٹا
Far	= <i>dūr</i>	دور	A liar	= <i>ghēṭhā</i>	چھوٹھا
String	= <i>dor</i>	ڈور	47. Labour or hardwork	= <i>mīhnat</i>	مہنت
Race	= <i>daur</i>	دڑ	Love	= <i>mahablat</i>	محببت
31. Deer	= <i>hīran</i>	ھرن	48. Friday	= <i>jum'a</i>	جمعہ
Astonished	= <i>hāīrān</i>	حیران	To collect	= <i>jam'a karnā</i>	جمع کرنا
32. Yard	= <i>gāz</i>	گز			
Grass	= <i>ghās</i>	گھاس			
33. Letter	= <i>chīṭhī</i>	چٹی			
Leave	= <i>chhutti</i>	چھٹی			
Small (f)	= <i>chhofī</i>	چھوٹی			
Top	= <i>choṭī</i>	چوٹی			

49.	Order	= hukam	حکم	54.	Hence	= pas	پس
	Governor	= hēhim	حاکم		Near	= pās	پاس
	Physician	= halim	حکیم	65.	Loss	= kam	کم
50.	March	= kūch	کچ		Work	= kām	کام
	Some	= kuchh	کچھ	66.	Anxiety	= fikr	فکر
	Street	= lācha	کرچہ		Beggar	= faqir	فقیہ
	Unripe	= lachehā	کچا	67.	Ruin	= lāriah	بارش
	Mud	= kichar	کیچڑ		Rainy sea- son	} barsāt	برسات
	Male	= khachhar	خچر				
61.	Any	= kaī	کوئی	68.	Expences	= kharach	خرچ
	Several	= kas	کئی		Sword	= kirach	کرچ
	Ditch	= khāi	کہائی	69.	Pleased	= khush	خوش
52.	To ent	= khānā	کہانا		Senses	= hosh	ہوش
	House (I)	= khāna	خانہ	70.	Blood	= khūn	خون
53.	A present	= nazr	نذر		Nails	= nākhun	ناخن
	Sight (eye)	= nazar	نظر	71.	At last	= ākhīr	آخر
54.	Present (Indj.)	} hāzīr	حاضر		End	= akhir	اخیر
	Thousand			= hazār	ہزار		
55.	On or but	= qar	پر	72.	Some	= b'az	بعض
	Across	= pār	پار		A hawk	= lāz	باز
56.	Address	= patah	پتہ	73.	Distance	= fāsilā	فاصلہ
	A leaf	= pattā	پتا		Decision	= faislā	فیصلہ
	Stone	= pathhar	پتھر	74.	Anger	= ghussā	غصہ
57.	A watch (3 hours)	} pahar	پہر		Angry	= ghussē	غصے
	Mountain			= pahār	پہاڑ		
58.	Back	= pīth	پیتھ	75.	Angry	= khafā	خفا
	Belly	= pīt	پیت		Enough	= kāfi	کافی
59.	Bandage	= paffi	پٹی	76.	Side	= taraf	طرف
	Belt	= pēfi	پیٹی		Manner	= tarah	طرح
60.	Bridge	= pul	پل	77.	Special	= khāsa	خاص
	Fruit	= phal	پھل		Fairly	= khāsa	خاصہ
	Flower	= hūl	پھول	78.	Seven	= sāt	سات
61.	Sort or kind	= qisam	قسم		Sixty	= sāth	ساتھ
	Oath	= qasam	قسم		With	= sōth	ساتھ
62.	News	= khabar	خبر	79.	Pence	= sulah	صلح
	Grave	= qalar	قبر		Advice	= salāh	صلاح
63.	Head	= sir	سر	80.	Cheap	= saslā	
	A walk	= sair	سیر		Lazy	= sust	
	A seer	= sēr	سیر	81.	Basket	= fokrā	ٹوکرا
					Piece	= tukrā	ٹکڑا
				82.	Pay	= talab	طلب
					Tank	= tālāb	تالاب
				83.	Hand	= hāth	ہاتھ
					Arms	= hathiyār	ہتھیار

84. First	= <i>paḥā</i>	پہا	96. Why	= <i>kyān</i>	کیوں
At first	= <i>paḥ ē</i>	پہا	How	= <i>kyānkar</i>	کیوں کر
85. Iron	= <i>lohā</i>	لہا	Because	= <i>kyān kī</i>	کیوں کی
Iron Smith	= <i>lohār</i>	لہار	97. All, whole	= <i>ṣārā</i>	سارا
86. Girth, or narrow	} <i>taṅg</i>	تنگ	+ 1	= <i>ṣār hē</i>	سارے
Leg	= <i>tāṅg</i>	ٹانگ	98. To count	= <i>ginnā</i>	گننا
87. To run away	{ <i>bhāg-jānā</i>	بھاگ جانا	Sugarcane	= <i>ganṇā</i>	گنا
To put to flight	{ <i>bhagā-dēnā</i>	بھاگ دینا	Ornament	= <i>gaḥnā</i>	گہنا
88. Deep	= <i>gahrā</i>	گہرا	Sin	= <i>gunāh</i>	گناہ
Pit	= <i>garhā</i>	گرہا	(So many) times	} <i>gunā</i>	گنا
89. To wake up (intr.)	} <i>jāgnā</i>	جاگنا	99. To fall	= <i>girnā</i>	گرنے
To wake up (tr.)	} <i>jagānā</i>	جاگانا	To be surrounded	} <i>ghīrnā</i>	گھیرنا
90. Dear	= <i>mahāṅgā</i>	مہنگا	To surround	= <i>ghērnā</i>	گھیرنا
To want	= <i>māṅgnā</i>	مانگنا	100. Ambush	= <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ
91. To escape	= <i>bachnā</i>	بچنا	Landing place	} <i>ghāt</i>	گھاٹ
To save	= <i>bachānā</i>	بچانا	Valley	= <i>ghāfi</i>	گھاٹی
92. To see	= <i>dēkhnā</i>	دیکھنا	101. An hour	= <i>ghanṭā</i>	گھنٹہ
To show	= <i>dīkhānā</i>	دیکھانا	Knee	= <i>ghuṭnā</i>	گھٹنا
93. Behind	= <i>pīchhē</i>	پچھے	102. To rob	= <i>lūṭnā</i>	لوٹنا
Below	= <i>nīchē</i>	نیچے	To return	= <i>lauṭnā</i>	لوٹنا
94. Except	= <i>śivā</i>	سوا	103. Example	= <i>misāl</i>	مثال
1 1/2	= <i>śarā</i>	سوا	Proverb	= <i>masāl</i>	مزل
95. 1 1/2	= <i>ḍērph</i>	ڈیرف	For example	= <i>masāl</i>	مثال
Tent	= <i>ḍērā</i>	ڈیرا	104. Winter	= <i>jārā</i>	جارا
			A little	= <i>śarā</i>	ذرا
			105. Necessity	= <i>zarūrāt</i>	ضرورت
			Necessary	= <i>zarūrī</i>	ضروری
			Certainly	= <i>zarūr</i>	ضرور

THE END.

PUBLISHED BY MUNSHI MOOL CHAND SAINGAL.

